

1 CERN-ACC-Note-2020-0002
2 Version v1.0
3 Geneva, April 29, 2020
4



5 **The Large Hadron-Electron Collider at the HL-LHC**

6 **LHeC Study Group**



7 To be submitted to J.Phys. G

Instructions for LHeC editors

Thanks for contributing to the 2019 CDR for the LHeC experiment and accelerator. Here, we briefly provide instructions for the editors of the CDR document in order to facilitate editing.

Quick start with git

- Clone the git repository: `$ git clone ..`
- Go to the respective (sub)directory, e.g.: `$ cd lhec-cdr-2019/higgs`
- ‘compile’ the selected chapter, by typing `$ make`
(which just calls `pdflatex` and `bibtex` consecutively)
- Open the resulting PDF file, e.g. `$ okular higgs.pdf`

For editing, just insert your contribution to the respective .tex-file (e.g. *higgs.tex*) (note: there may be a more distinct tex-substructure for individual chapters; therefore, please look out for further .tex-files in the directory).

Quick start with overleaf There exists a mirror at overleaf. Please ask for the link.

Compile the document To preview the manuscript, just navigate to a certain directory, i.e. type `cd ./higgs`, and then type `make`. This generates a PDF-file (e.g. *higgs.pdf*) which shows the selected chapter as written in the .tex-file (e.g. *higgs.tex*) together with the title page, this instructions page, table-of-content, and bibliography. **Important:** the latter pages disappear in the full document. The entire document is generated by calling `make` in the directory *main*.

Clean up Type `make clean` in a certain directory, which deletes all temporary latex files.

References Put BibTeX-items in ‘inspirehep’-format into the file `../lhec.bib`, and take care to not introduce duplicate entries (Example : [1]).

git repository The git repository is hosted by gitlab at CERN. For details see: <https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/lhec-cdr-2019>. Public checkout is possible, and the source is also available as a tar-ball (or .zip): <https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/lhec-cdr-2019/-/archive/master/lhec-cdr-2019-master.tar.gz> When committing changes, you need a CERN computing account, and authentication with ssh, krb5 or https is supported.

If you do not have a CERN account, please send your contribution to your chapter editor.

36 **git commit**

- 37 • synchronize with master: `git pull`
- 38 • compile: `make`
- 39 • (optional) list changes: `git status`
- 40 • (optional, but important) add new files: `git add <new files >`
- 41 • Commit changes: `git commit -m ‘‘your message’’` [optional: `select files`]
- 42 • Push changes to our common repository: `git push`

43 Note: do not forget to add (commit and push) new files, e.g. figures. In case, there are problems
44 when pushing to our main repository, send your changes to your chapter editor by mail.

45 **No CERN account** In case you do not have a CERN computing account: Clone/checkout
46 the gitlab repository or download the source code as zip-file or tar-ball from¹ <https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/lhec-cdr-2019>. Then make your edits prompt, and send your contribution to
47 the respective chapter editors by mail. Also, you can insert your contribution in overleaf.
48

¹A direct download link would be <https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/lhec-cdr-2019/-/archive/master/lhec-cdr-2019-master.tar.gz>.

49 **Remarks on the 'LHeC at HL-LHC' Paper (sent by mail, MK, 29.07.)**

- 50 1. The paper should be an update of the CDR, may refer to that, but also be selfconsistent.
51 It will have a few hundred pages, may be 400. There is no direct page limit, neither in
52 total nor for any chapter. It will be published in JPhysG.
- 53 2. We will use PDFLaTeX and git such that all contributors may directly edit. In order
54 to commit to the git repository, which is located at [https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/
55 lhec-cdr-2019](https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec/lhec-cdr-2019), you will need write permissions. Please send a mail to Daniel (britzger@mpp.mpg.de)
- 56 3. For release in the fall, for presenting the results at the Chavannes workshop [https://
57 indico.cern.ch/event/835947](https://indico.cern.ch/event/835947), and for having a bit of time for editing, we have set a
58 deadline of 11.10.2019 for all contributions. As all know, deadlines tend to slip, we yet
59 will have to make a sincere effort to release the paper to the arXiv in November, for which
60 11.10. looks just about realistic. It is known to be tight, but we all write about things we
61 have been working on for long.
- 62 4. There have been chapters created and chapter editors invited, who kindly agreed to help
63 bringing the chapters together. Nothing is frozen, additional names/colleagues may be
64 invited, headlines be changed as writing will dictate/suggest. This mail is to all of you,
65 the authors of sections and editors who surely will find a good way to collaborate. The
66 overall editing will be with Oliver and Max
- 67 5. We have agreed to write an update on LHeC at HL-LHC, not the FCC as its CDR just
68 went out. Where reasonable a link to FCC as well as joint presentations or plots may
69 be instructive. We thought it would be interesting, as an Appendix, to have a separate
70 chapter on ep with what now is called LE FCC, a 20 TeV proton energy FCC.
- 71 6. We have put more emphasis than before on the relation to pp. Thus there is a separate
72 chapter on HL-LHC and a separate chapter on the relation of ep with pp. We thought
73 emphasis should also be clear to the importance of eA.
- 74 7. Further, the importance of energy recovery and the role and perspective of PERLE must
75 be disussed, this is currently an appendix, but represents the base of the accelerator
76 development to some extent.
- 77 8. Following the cost estimates and IR synchrotron radiation load, we consider $E_e=50$ GeV
78 in $1/4$ U(LHC) as a new baseline [compared to 60 GeV, $1/3$]. The $1/4$ will allow upgrades
79 to almost 60 GeV and we therefore shall not aim at redoing all analyses done with 60 GeV
80 now with 50. If you do new ones, take in doubt 50 GeV please.

Contents

| | | |
|-----|--|-----------|
| 82 | 1 Parton Distributions - Resolving the Substructure of the Proton | 6 |
| 83 | 1.1 Introduction | 6 |
| 84 | 1.1.1 Partons in Deep Inelastic Scattering | 7 |
| 85 | 1.1.2 Fit Methodology and HERA PDFs | 8 |
| 86 | 1.2 Simulated LHeC Data | 11 |
| 87 | 1.2.1 Inclusive Neutral and Charged Current Cross Sections | 11 |
| 88 | 1.2.2 Heavy Quark Densities | 15 |
| 89 | 1.3 Parton Distributions from the LHeC | 16 |
| 90 | 1.3.1 Procedure and Assumptions | 16 |
| 91 | 1.3.2 Valence Quarks | 19 |
| 92 | 1.3.3 Light Sea Quarks | 21 |
| 93 | 1.3.4 Strange Quark | 22 |
| 94 | 1.3.5 Heavy Quarks | 24 |
| 95 | 1.3.6 The Gluon PDF | 26 |
| 96 | 1.3.7 PDF determinations with different datasets | 28 |
| 97 | 1.4 Parton-Parton Luminosities | 28 |
| 98 | 1.5 The 3D Structure of the Proton | 31 |
| 99 | 2 Exploration of Quantum Chromodynamics | 38 |
| 100 | 2.1 Determination of the strong coupling constant | 38 |
| 101 | 2.1.1 Strong coupling from inclusive jet cross sections | 39 |
| 102 | 2.1.2 Pinning Down α_s with Inclusive and Jet LHeC Data | 42 |
| 103 | 2.1.3 Strong coupling from other processes | 45 |
| 104 | 2.2 Discovery of New Strong Interaction Dynamics at Small x | 47 |
| 105 | 2.2.1 New Small x Dynamics | 47 |
| 106 | 2.2.2 Disentangling non-linear QCD dynamics at the LHeC | 50 |
| 107 | 2.2.3 Low x and the Longitudinal Structure Function F_L | 55 |
| 108 | 2.2.4 Relation to Ultrahigh Energy Neutrino and Astroparticle physics | 61 |
| 109 | 2.2.5 Impact of New Small- x Dynamics on Hadron Collider Physics | 64 |
| 110 | 2.3 Diffractive Deep Inelastic Scattering at the LHeC | 65 |
| 111 | 2.3.1 Introduction and Formalism | 65 |
| 112 | 2.3.2 Pseudodata for diffractive structure functions | 70 |
| 113 | 2.3.3 Potential for constraining diffractive PDFs at the LHeC and FCC-eh | 71 |
| 114 | 2.3.4 Factorisation tests using Hadronic Final States in Diffractive DIS | 73 |
| 115 | 2.4 Theoretical Developments | 74 |
| 116 | 2.4.1 Prospects for Higher Order pQCD in DIS | 74 |
| 117 | 2.4.2 Theoretical Concepts on the Light Cone | 75 |
| 118 | 3 Electroweak and Top Quark Physics | 80 |

| | | | |
|-----|--------|--|----|
| 119 | 3.1 | Electroweak Physics with Inclusive DIS data | 80 |
| 120 | 3.1.1 | Electroweak effects in inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections | 80 |
| 121 | 3.1.2 | Methodology of a combined EW and QCD fit | 81 |
| 122 | 3.1.3 | Weak boson masses M_W and M_Z | 82 |
| 123 | 3.1.4 | Further mass determinations | 84 |
| 124 | 3.1.5 | Weak Neutral Current Couplings | 85 |
| 125 | 3.1.6 | The neutral current ρ_{NC} and κ_{NC} parameters | 86 |
| 126 | 3.1.7 | The effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}$ | 87 |
| 127 | 3.1.8 | Electroweak effects in charged-current scattering | 89 |
| 128 | 3.1.9 | Direct W and Z production and Anomalous Triple Gauge Couplings . . . | 89 |
| 129 | 3.1.10 | Radiation Amplitude Zero | 93 |
| 130 | 3.1.11 | Conclusion | 94 |
| 131 | 3.2 | Top Quark Physics | 94 |
| 132 | 3.2.1 | Wtq Couplings | 95 |
| 133 | 3.2.2 | FCNC Top Quark Couplings | 97 |
| 134 | 3.2.3 | Other Top Quark Property Measurements and Searches for New Physics . | 98 |
| 135 | 3.2.4 | Summary Top Quark Physics | 98 |

Chapter 1

Parton Distributions - Resolving the Substructure of the Proton

1.1 Introduction

Since the discovery of quarks in the famous $ep \rightarrow eX$ scattering experiment at Stanford [2, 3], the deep inelastic scattering process has been established as the most reliable method to resolve the substructure of protons, which was recognised, not least by Feynman [4], immediately. Since that time, a series of electron, muon and neutrino DIS experiments installed the Quark-Parton Model and supported the development of Quantum Chromodynamics. A new quality of this physics was realised with HERA, the first electron-proton collider built, which extended the kinematic range in momentum transfer squared to $Q_{max}^2 = s \simeq 10^5 \text{ GeV}^2$, for $s = 4E_e E_p$. Seen from today's perspective, largely influenced by the LHC, it is necessary to reach a further level in these investigations, with higher energy and much increased luminosity than HERA could achieve. This is a major motivation for building the LHeC, with an extension of the Q^2 and $1/x$ range by more than an order of magnitude and an increase of the luminosity by a factor of almost a thousand. QCD may break, be embedded in a higher gauge symmetry, free colour be observed: one may ask a series of fundamental questions on QCD [5] and grasp the importance of a precision DIS programme with the LHeC.

The subsequent chapter is mainly devoted to the exploration of the seminal potential of the LHeC to resolve the substructure of the proton in an unprecedented range, with the first ever complete and coherent measurement of the full set of parton distribution functions (PDFs) in one experiment. The precise determination of PDFs, consistently to high orders pQCD, is crucial for the interpretation of LHC physics, its precision electroweak and Higgs measurements as well as the high mass region where new physics may occur when the HL-LHC operates. Extra constraints on PDFs arise also from pp scattering as is discussed in a later chapter. Conceptually, however, the LHeC provides the important opportunity to completely separate the PDF determination from proton-proton physics. This approach is not only more precise for the PDFs but it is theoretically accurate and enables sincere tests of QCD, by confronting independent predictions with LHC (and later FCC) measurements, as well as providing an unambiguous base for reliable interpretations of searches for new physics.

While the resolution of the longitudinal, collinear structure of the proton is key to the physics programme of the LHeC (and the LHC), the ep collider provides further fundamental insight in the structure of the proton: semi-inclusive measurements of jets and vector mesons, and

169 especially Deeply Virtual Compton Scattering, a process established at HERA, will shed light
 170 on also the transverse structure of the proton in a new kinematic range. This is presented at
 171 the end of the current chapter.

172 1.1.1 Partons in Deep Inelastic Scattering

173 Parton Distribution Functions $xf(x, Q^2)$ represent a probabilistic view on hadron substructure
 174 at a given distance, $1/\sqrt{Q^2}$. They depend on the parton type $f = (q_i, g)$, for quarks and
 175 gluons, and must be determined from experiment, most suitably DIS, as QCD is not prescribing
 176 the parton density at a given momentum fraction Bjorken x . PDFs are important also for they
 177 determine Drell-Yan, hadron-hadron scattering processes, supposedly universally through the
 178 QCD factorisation theorem [6] ¹. The PDF programme of the LHeC is of unprecedented reach
 179 for the following reasons:

- 180 • For the first time it will resolve the partonic structure of the proton (and nuclei) com-
 181 pletely, i.e. determine the u_v, d_v, u, d, s, c, b , and gluon momentum distributions through
 182 neutral and charged current cross section as well as direct heavy quark PDF measure-
 183 ments, performed in a huge kinematic range of DIS, from $x = 10^{-6}$ to 0.9 and from Q^2
 184 above 1 to 10^6 GeV². The LHeC explores the strange density and the momentum fraction
 185 carried by top quarks [8] which was impossible at HERA.
- 186 • Very high luminosity and unprecedented precision, owing to both new detector technology
 187 and the redundant evaluation of the event kinematics from the leptonic and hadronic final
 188 states, will lead to extremely high PDF precision, and accuracy.
- 189 • Because of the high LHeC energy, the weak probes (W, Z) dominate the interaction at
 190 larger Q^2 which permits the up and down sea and valence quark distributions to be resolved
 191 in the full range of x . Thus no further data will be required ²: that is, there is no influence
 192 from higher twists nor nuclear uncertainties or data inconsistencies, which are the main
 193 diseases of current so-called global PDF determinations.

194 While PDFs are nowadays often seen as merely a tool for interpreting LHC data, in fact what
 195 really is involved is a new understanding of strong interaction dynamics and the deeper resolution
 196 of substructure extending into hitherto uncovered phase space regions, in particular the small x
 197 region, by virtue of the very high energy s , and the very small spatial dimension ($1/\sqrt{Q^2}$) and
 198 the $x \rightarrow 1$ region, owing to the high luminosity and energy. The QPM is not tested well enough,
 199 despite decades of DIS and other experiments, and QCD is not developed fully either.

200 Examples of problems of fundamental interest for the LHeC to resolve are: i) the long awaited
 201 resolution of the behaviour of u/d near the kinematic limit ($x \rightarrow 1$); ii) the flavour democracy
 202 of the light quark sea (is $d \simeq u \simeq s$??); iii) the existence of quark-level charge-symmetry [9];
 203 iv) the behaviour of the ratio \bar{d}/\bar{u} at small x ; v) the turn-on and the values of heavy quark
 204 PDFs; vi) the value of the strong coupling constant, or, vii) the question of non-linear parton
 205 interactions at small x where the gluon and quark densities rise.

¹In his referee report on the LHeC CDR, in 2012, Guido Altarelli noted on the factorisation theorem in QCD for hadron colliders that: “many people still advance doubts. Actually this question could be studied experimentally, in that the LHeC, with its improved precision, could put bounds on the allowed amount of possible factorisation violations (e.g. by measuring in DIS the gluon at large x and then comparing with jet production at large p_T in hadron colliders).” This question was addressed also in a previous LHeC paper [7].

²The LHeC may be operated at basically HERA energies and collect a fb⁻¹ of luminosity for cross checks and maximising the high x , medium Q^2 acceptance, see Sect. 1.2.

206 Of special further interest is the gluon distribution for the gluon self-interaction prescribes all
 207 visible mass, the gluon-gluon fusion process dominates Higgs production at hadron colliders,
 208 the LHC and the FCC, and because its large x behaviour, essentially unknown today, affects
 209 predictions of SUSY cross sections at the LHC.

210 The LHeC may be understood as an extension of HERA to a considerable extent. It has the
 211 reach in $x \propto 1/s$ to resolve the question of new strong interaction dynamics at small x and it
 212 accesses with huge luminosity high Q^2 , much larger than $M_{W,Z}^2$, to make accurate use of weak
 213 NC and CC cross sections in DIS PDF physics for the first time. QCD analyses of HERA data
 214 are still ongoing. For obvious reasons, there is no quantitative analysis of LHC related PDF
 215 physics possible without relying on the HERA data, and often its QCD analyses. These are
 216 introduced briefly next. Albeit with certain assumptions and limited luminosity, HERA yet
 217 changed the field of PDF physics as compared to fixed target data completely, see Ref. [10], and
 218 it opened the era of physics of high parton densities at small x .

219 1.1.2 Fit Methodology and HERA PDFs

220 The methodology of PDF determinations with HERA data has been developed over decades
 221 by the H1 and ZEUS Collaborations [11–13], in close contact with many theorists. It has been
 222 essentially adopted with suitable modifications for the LHeC PDF prospect study as is detailed
 223 subsequently.

224 HERAPDF fits use information from both $e^\pm p$ neutral current and charged current scattering
 225 from exclusively the ep collider experiments, H1 and ZEUS, up to high $Q^2 = 30\,000\text{ GeV}^2$ and
 226 down to about $x = 5 \cdot 10^{-5}$. The precision of the HERA combined data is below 1.5% over the
 227 Q^2 range of $3 < Q^2 < 500\text{ GeV}^2$ and remains below 3% up to $Q^2 = 3000\text{ GeV}^2$. The precision
 228 for large $x > 0.5$ is rather poor due to limited luminosity and high- x acceptance limitations at
 229 medium Q^2 .

230 The QCD analysis is performed at LO, NLO and NNLO within the $xFitter$ framework [12,14,15],
 231 and the latest version is the HERAPDF2.0 family [13]. The DGLAP evolution of the PDFs, as
 232 well as the light-quark coefficient functions, are calculated using QCDNUM [16,17]. The contri-
 233 butions of heavy quarks are calculated in the general-mass variable-flavour-number (GMVFN)
 234 scheme of Refs. [18,19]. The renormalisation and factorisation scales for the DIS processes are
 235 taken as $\mu_r = \mu_f = \sqrt{Q^2}$. The program MINUIT [20] is used for the χ^2 minimisation. Experi-
 236 mental uncertainties are determined using the Hessian method imposing a $\chi^2 + 1$ criterion. This
 237 is usually impossible in global fits over rather incoherent data sets originating from different
 238 processes and experiments, but has been a major advantage of the solely HERA based QCD
 239 analyses.

240 In the HERAPDF analysis, as well as subsequently in the LHeC study, the starting scale is chosen
 241 to be $Q_0^2 = 1.9\text{ GeV}^2$ such that it is below the charm mass threshold, m_c^2 . The heavy quark
 242 masses are $m_c = 1.43\text{ GeV}$ and $m_b = 4.5\text{ GeV}$, following the results of an analysis of the HERA
 243 combined charm and beauty data. The strong coupling constant is set to $\alpha_S(M_Z) = 0.118$ ³.
 244 A minimum Q^2 cut, $Q_{min}^2 \geq 3.5\text{ GeV}^2$, is imposed on the HERA data for staying in the DIS
 245 kinematic range. All these assumptions are varied in the evaluation of model uncertainties on
 246 the final fit. These variations will be essentially have no significant effect with the LHeC as

³ The strong coupling constant cannot be reliably determined from inclusive HERA data alone. DIS results, including fixed target data, have provided values which tend to be lower than the here chosen value, see for a discussion [21]. As is further presented in detail in Sect. 2.1 the LHeC reaches a sensitivity to α_s at the per mille level based on inclusive and jet data as well as their combination.

247 the sensitivity to the quark masses, for example, is hugely improved with respect to HERA, α_s
 248 known to 1 – 2 per mille, and the kinematic range of the data is much extended.

249 In HERAPDF fits, the quark distributions at the initial Q_0^2 are represented by the generic form

$$xq_i(x) = A_i x^{B_i} (1-x)^{C_i} P_i(x), \quad (1.1)$$

250 where i specifies the flavour of the quark distribution and $P_i(x) = (1 + D_i x + E_i x^2)$. The inclusive
 251 NC and CC cross sections determine four independent quark distributions, essentially the sums
 252 of the up and down quark and anti-quark densities. These may be decomposed into any four
 253 other distributions of up and down quarks with an ad-hoc assumption on the fraction of strange
 254 to anti-down quarks which has no numeric effect on the PDFs, apart from that on $x s$ itself. In
 255 HERAPDF2.0 the parameterised quark distributions, xq_i , are chosen to be the valence quark
 256 distributions (xu_v , $x d_v$) and the light anti-quark distributions ($x\bar{u}$, $x\bar{d}$). This has been adopted
 257 for LHeC also.

258 The parameters A_{u_v} and A_{d_v} are fixed using the quark counting rule. The normalisation and
 259 slope parameters, A and B , of \bar{u} and \bar{d} are set equal such that $x\bar{u} = x\bar{d}$ at $x \rightarrow 0$, a crucial
 260 assumption which the LHeC can validate. The strange quark PDF $x\bar{s}$ is set as a fixed fraction
 261 $r_s = 0.67$ of $x\bar{d}$. This fraction is varied in the determination of model uncertainties. By default
 262 it is assumed that $x s = x\bar{s}$ and that u and d sea and anti-quarks have the same distributions
 263 also. These assumptions will be resolved by the LHeC and their uncertainties be eliminated,
 264 see Sect. 1.3.4. The D , E and F terms in the polynomial $P_i(x)$ are used only if required by the
 265 data, following a χ^2 saturation procedure described in Ref. [12]. This leads for HERAPDF2.0
 266 to two additional terms, $P_{u_v}(x) = 1 + E_{u_v} x^2$ and $P_{\bar{u}} = 1 + D_{\bar{u}} x$.

267 The gluon distribution is parameterised differently

$$xg(x) = A_g x^{B_g} (1-x)^{C_g} - A'_g x^{B'_g} (1-x)^{C'_g}. \quad (1.2)$$

268 The normalisation parameters A_g and A'_g are fixed using the momentum sum rule. Variations
 269 of the PDFs were also considered with $A'_g = 0$ which for all initial HERA data fits had been the
 270 default choice. The appearance of this negative second term may be understood as coming from
 271 a not-well constrained behaviour of $xg(x, Q^2)$ at small x . In fact, xg is resembling a valence-
 272 quark distribution at $Q^2 \simeq Q_0^2$. The much extended Q^2 range of the LHeC at a given small x
 273 and the access to much smaller x values than probed at HERA will rather certainly enable this
 274 behaviour to be clarified. Since also C'_g had been set to just a large value, there is negligible
 275 effect of that second term in Eq. 1.2 on the resulting PDF uncertainties. Consequently A'_g is set
 276 to zero in the LHeC study.

277 Alternative parameterisations are used in the evaluation of a parameterisation uncertainty.
 278 These variations include: introducing extra parameters D , E for each quark distribution; the
 279 removal of primed gluon parameters; and the relaxation of assumptions about the low- x sea.
 280 These fits provide alternative extracted PDFs with similar fit χ^2 . The maximum deviation from
 281 the central PDF at each value of x is taken as an envelope and added in quadrature with the
 282 experimental and model uncertainties to give the total uncertainty. As for the model uncer-
 283 tainties, the extended range and improved precision of the LHeC data may well be expected to
 284 render such variations negligible.

285 The results of the HERA PDF analysis [13] are shown in Fig. 1.1 for the HERAPDF2.0NNLO
 286 PDF set, displaying experimental, model and parameterisation uncertainties separately. The
 287 structure of the proton is seen to depend on the resolution $\propto 1/\sqrt{Q^2}$, with which it is probed.
 288 At Q^2 of about 1 GeV^2 , corresponding to 0.2 fm , the parton contents may be decomposed as

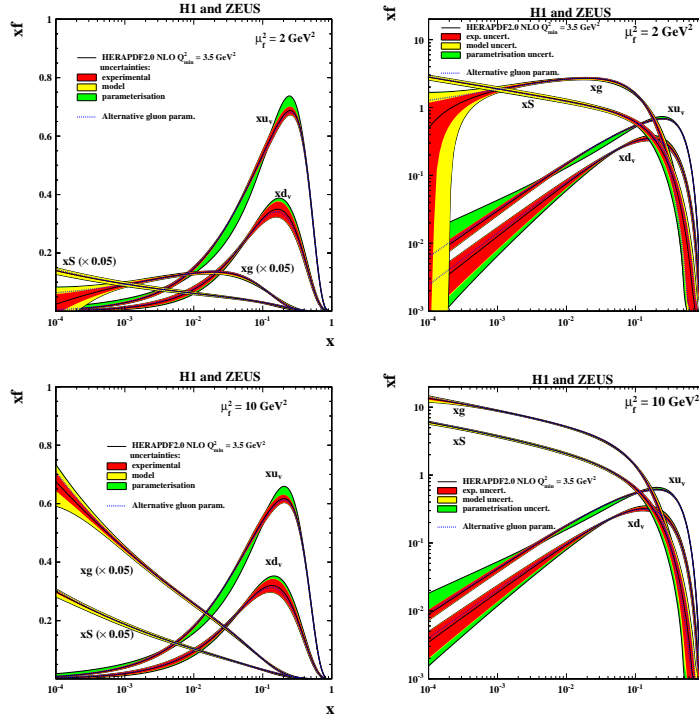


Figure 1.1: Parton distributions as determined by the QCD fit to the combined H1 and ZEUS data at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ (top) and at $Q^2 = 10 \text{ GeV}^2$ (bottom). The color coding represents the experimental, model and parameterisation uncertainties separately. Here $xS = 2x(\bar{U} + \bar{D})$ denotes the total sea quark density. Note that xg and xS are scaled by $1/20$ in the left side plots with a linear y scale.

289 is shown in Figure 1.1 top. The gluon distribution at $Q^2 \simeq 1 \text{ GeV}^2$ has a valence like shape,
 290 i.e. at very low x the momentum is carried by sea quarks, see Fig. 1.1 (top). At medium
 291 $x \sim 0.05$ the gluon density dominates over all quark densities. At largest x , above 0.3, the
 292 proton structure is dominated by the up and down valence quarks. This picture evolves such
 293 that below 10^{-16} m , for $x \leq 0.1$, the gluon density dominates also over the sea quark density,
 294 see Figure 1.1 (bottom). The valence quark distributions are rather insensitive to the resolution
 295 which reflects their non-singlet transformation behaviour in QCD.

296 The HERAPDF set differs from other PDF sets in that: i) it represents a fit to a consistent data
 297 set with small correlated systematic uncertainties; ii) it uses data on solely a proton target such
 298 that no heavy target corrections are needed and the assumption of strong isospin invariance,
 299 $d_{\text{proton}} = u_{\text{neutron}}$, is not required; iii) a large x, Q^2 region is covered such that no regions where
 300 higher twist effects are important are included in the analysis.

301 The limitations of HERA PDFs are known as well: i) the data is limited in statistics such
 302 that the region $x > 0.5$ is poorly constrained; ii) the energy is limited such that the very low
 303 x region, below $x \simeq 10^{-4}$, is not or not reliably accessed; iii) limits of luminosity and energy
 304 implied that the potential of the flavour resolution through weak interactions, in NC and CC,
 305 while remarkable, could not be utilised accurately; iv) while the strange quark density was
 306 not accessed by H1 and ZEUS, only initial measurements of xc and xb could be performed.
 307 The strong success with respect to the fixed target PDF situation *ante* HERA has been most
 308 remarkable. The thorough clarification of parton dynamics and the establishment of a precision
 309 PDF base for LHC and later hadron colliders, however, make a next generation, high energy
 310 and luminosity ep collider a necessity. The PDF potential of the LHeC is presented next.

1.2 Simulated LHeC Data

1.2.1 Inclusive Neutral and Charged Current Cross Sections

In order to estimate the uncertainties of PDFs from LHeC, several sets of LHeC inclusive NC/CC DIS data with a full set of uncertainties had been simulated and are described in the following. The systematic uncertainties of the DIS cross sections have a number of sources, which can be classified as uncorrelated and correlated across bin boundaries. For the NC case, the uncorrelated sources, apart from event statistics, are a global efficiency uncertainty, due for example to tracking or electron identification errors, as well as uncertainties due to photo-production background, calorimeter noise and radiative corrections. The correlated uncertainties result from imperfect electromagnetic and hadronic energy scale and angle calibrations. In the classic ep kinematic reconstruction methods used here, the scattered electron energy E'_e and polar electron angle θ_e , complemented by the energy of the hadronic final state E_h , can be employed to determine Q^2 and x in a redundant way.

Briefly, Q^2 is best determined with the electron kinematics and x is calculated from $y = Q^2/sx$. At large y , the inelasticity is best measured using the electron energy, $y_e \simeq 1 - E'_e/E_e$. At low y , the relation $y_h = E_h \sin^2(\theta_h/2)/E_e$ can be used to provide a measurement of the inelasticity with the hadronic final state energy E_h and angle θ_h . This results in the uncertainty $\delta y_h/y_h \simeq \delta E_h/E_h$, which is determined by the E_h calibration uncertainty to good approximation.

There have been various refined methods proposed to determine the DIS kinematics, such as the double angle method [22], which is commonly used to calibrate the electromagnetic energy scale, or the so-called Σ method [23], which exhibits reduced sensitivity to QED radiative corrections, see a discussion in Ref. [24]. For the estimate of the cross section uncertainty the electron method (Q_e^2, y_e) is used at large y , while at low y we use Q_h^2, y_h , which is transparent and accurate to better than a factor of two. In much of the phase space, moreover, it is rather the uncorrelated efficiency or further specific errors than the kinematic correlations, which dominate the cross section measurement precision.

The assumptions used in the simulation of pseudodata are summarised in Tab. 1.1. The procedure was gauged with full H1 Monte Carlo simulations and the assumptions are corresponding to H1's achievements with an improvement by at most a factor of two. Using a numerical procedure developed in [25], the scale uncertainties are transformed to kinematics-dependent correlated cross-section uncertainties caused by imperfect measurements of E'_e , θ_e and E_h . These

| Source of uncertainty | Uncertainty |
|--|-------------|
| Scattered electron energy scale $\Delta E'_e/E'_e$ | 0.1 % |
| Scattered electron polar angle | 0.1 mrad |
| Hadronic energy scale $\Delta E_h/E_h$ | 0.5 % |
| Radiative corrections | 0.3 % |
| Photoproduction background (for $y > 0.5$) | 1 % |
| Global efficiency error | 0.5 % |

Table 1.1: Assumptions used in the simulation of the NC cross sections on the size of uncertainties from various sources. The top three are uncertainties on the calibrations which are transported to provide correlated systematic cross section errors. The lower three values are uncertainties of the cross section caused by various sources.

data uncertainties were imposed for all data sets, NC and CC, as are subsequently listed and described.

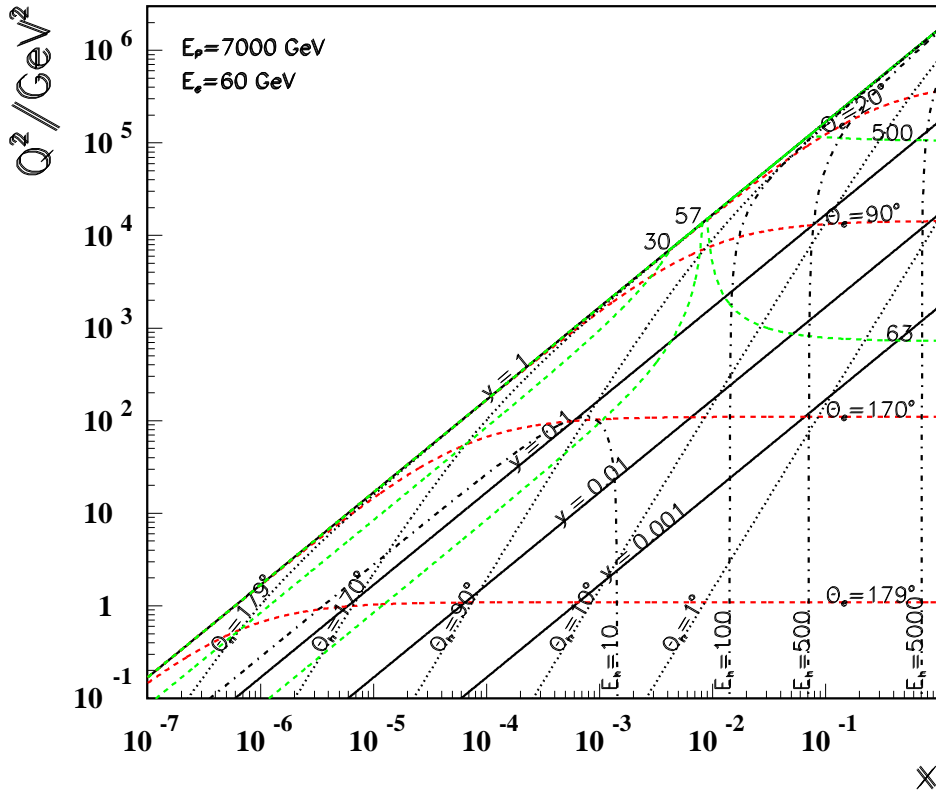


Figure 1.2: Kinematic plane covered with the maximum beam energies at LHeC. Red dashed: Lines of constant scattered electron polar angle. Note that low Q^2 is measured with electrons scattered into the backward region, highest Q^2 is reached with Rutherford backscattering; Black dotted: lines of constant angle of the hadronic final state; Black solid: Lines of constant inelasticity $y = Q^2/sx$; Green dashed: Lines of constant scattered electron energy E'_e . Most of the central region is covered by what is termed the kinematic peak, where $E'_e \simeq E_e$. The small x region is accessed with small energies E'_e below E_e while the very forward, high Q^2 electrons carry TeV energies; Black dashed-dotted: lines of constant hadronic final state energy E_h . Note that the very forward, large x region sees very high hadronic energy deposits too.

344 The design of the LHeC assumes that it operates with the LHC in the high luminosity phase,
 345 following LS4 at the earliest. As detailed in Chapter 2, it is assumed there will be an initial
 346 phase, during which LHeC may collect 50 fb^{-1} of data. This may begin with a sample of 5 fb^{-1} .
 347 Such values are very high when compared with HERA, corresponding to the hundred(ten)-fold
 348 of luminosity which H1 collected in its lifetime of about 15 years. The total luminosity may
 349 come close to 1 ab^{-1} .

350 The bulk of the data is assumed to be taken with electrons, possibly at large negative helicity
 351 P_e , because this configuration maximises the number of Higgs bosons one can produce at the
 352 LHeC: e^- couples to W^- which interacts primarily with an up-quark and the CC cross section
 353 is proportional to $(1 - P_e)$. However, for electroweak physics there is a strong interest to vary
 354 the polarisation and charge ⁴. It was considered that the e^+p luminosity may reach 1 fb^{-1}
 355 while the tenfold has been simulated for sensitivity studies. A dataset has also been produced

⁴With a linac source, the generation of an intense positron beam is very challenging and will not be able to compete with the electron intensity, this is discussed in the accelerator chapter.

356 with reduced proton beam energy as that enlarges the acceptance towards large x at smaller
 357 Q^2 . Dedicated further sets have been generated for the F_L study (Sect.2.2.3). The full list of
 simulated sets is provided in Tab.1.2.

| Parameter | Unit | Data set | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|----------|------|----|------|----|----|----|------|------|
| | | D1 | D2 | D3 | D4 | D5 | D6 | D7 | D8 | D9 |
| Proton beam energy | TeV | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 1 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 |
| Lepton charge | | -1 | -1 | -1 | -1 | -1 | +1 | +1 | -1 | -1 |
| Longitudinal lepton polarisation | | -0.8 | -0.8 | 0 | -0.8 | 0 | 0 | 0 | +0.8 | +0.8 |
| Integrated luminosity | fb ⁻¹ | 5 | 50 | 50 | 1000 | 1 | 1 | 10 | 10 | 50 |

Table 1.2: Summary of characteristic parameters of data sets used to simulate neutral and charged current e^\pm cross section data, for a lepton beam energy of $E_e = 50$ GeV.

358

359 The highest energies obviously give access to the smallest x at a given Q^2 , and to the maximum
 360 Q^2 at fixed x . This is illustrated with the kinematic plane and iso-energy and iso-angle lines,
 361 see Fig. 1.2. It is instructive to see how the variation of the proton beam energy changes
 362 the kinematics considerably and enables additional coverage of various regions. This is clear
 363 from Fig. 1.3 which shows the kinematic plane choosing the about minimum energies the LHeC
 could operate with. There are striking changes one may note which are related to kinematics

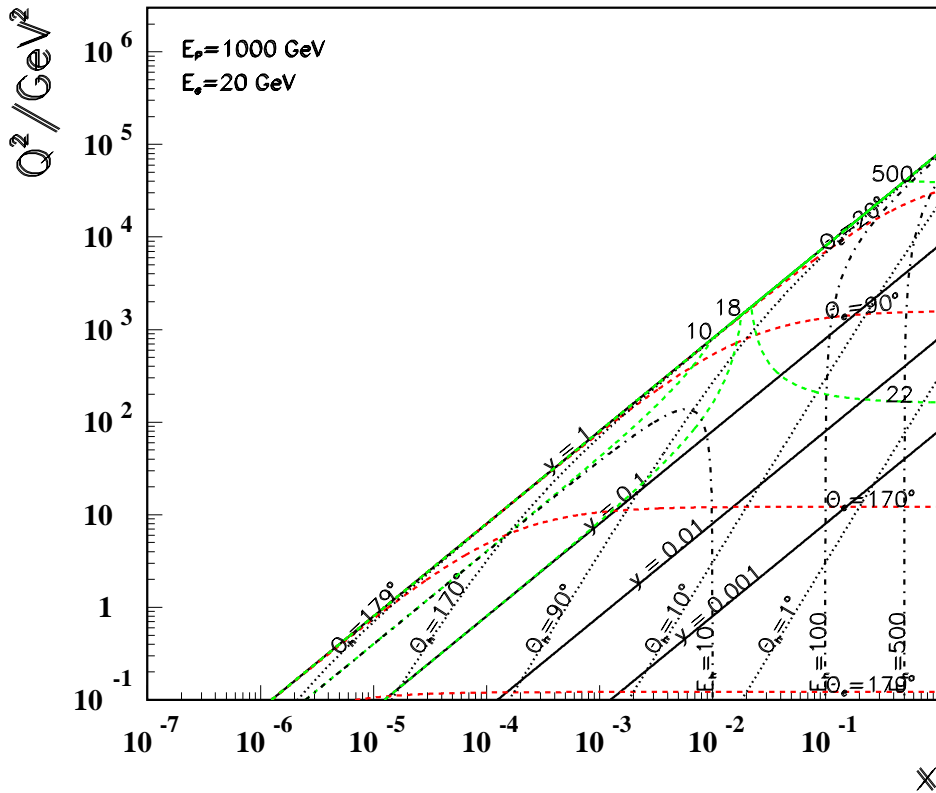


Figure 1.3: Kinematic plane covered with the minimum beam energies at LHeC. The meaning of the curves is the same as in the previous figure. This coverage is very similar to that by HERA as the energies are about the same.

364

365 (c.f. Ref. [25]). For example, one can see that the line of $\theta_e = 179^\circ$ now corresponds to $Q^2 \simeq$
 366 0.1 GeV^2 which is due to lowering E_e as compared to 1 GeV^2 in the maximum energy case,
 367 cf. Fig. 1.2. Similarly, comparing the two figures one finds that the lower Q^2 , larger x region
 368 becomes much easier accessible with lower energies, in this case solely owing to the reduction
 369 of E_p from 7 to 1 TeV. It is worthwhile to note that the LHeC, when operating at these low
 370 energies, would permit a complete repetition of the HERA programme, within a short period of
 371 special data taking.

372 The coverage of the kinematic plane is illustrated in the plot of the x, Q^2 bin centers of data
 373 points used in simulations, see Fig. 1.4 [26]. The full coverage at highest Bjorken- x , i.e. very
 374 close to $x = 1$, is enabled by the high luminosity of the LHeC. This was impossible to achieve for
 375 HERA as the NC/CC DIS cross sections decrease proportional to some power of $(1 - x)$ when
 x approaches 1, as has long been established with Regge counting [27–29].

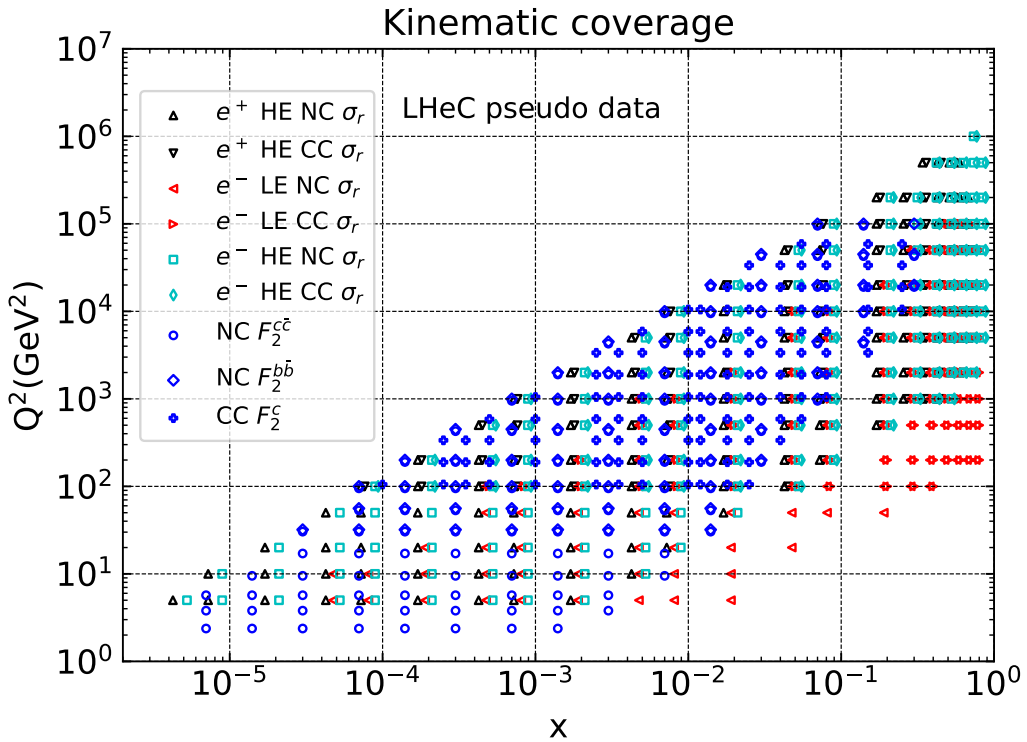


Figure 1.4: Illustration of the x, Q^2 values of simulated cross section and heavy quark density data used in LHeC studies. The red points illustrate the gain in acceptance towards large x at fixed Q^2 when E_p is lowered, see text.

376

377 It has been a prime goal, leading beyond previous PDF studies, to understand the importance of
 378 these varying data taking conditions for measuring PDFs with the LHeC. This holds especially
 379 for the question about what can be expected from an initial, lower luminosity LHeC operation
 380 period, which is of highest interest for the LHC analyses during the HL-LHC period. Some
 381 special data sets of lowered electron energy have also been produced in order to evaluate the
 382 potential to measure F_L , see Sect. 2.2.3. These data sets have not been included in the bulk
 383 PDF analyses presented in this Chapter subsequently.

384 **1.2.2 Heavy Quark Densities**

385 The LHeC is the ideal environment to determine the strange, charm and bottom density distri-
 386 butions which is necessary for a comprehensive unfolding of the parton contents and dynamics.
 387 The principal technique is charm tagging (in CC for xs , in NC for xc) and bottom tagging
 388 (in NC for xb). The beam spot of the LHeC has the transverse extension of about $(7 \mu\text{m})^2$.
 389 The inner Silicon detectors has a resolution of typically 10 microns to be compared with decay
 390 lengths of charm and beauty particles of hundreds of μm . The experimental challenges then are
 391 the beam pipe radius, coping at the LHeC with strong synchrotron radiation effects, and the
 392 forward tagging acceptance, similar to the HL-LHC challenges albeit much easier through the
 393 absence of pile-up in ep . Very sophisticated techniques are being developed at the LHC in order
 394 to identify b-production through jets [30] which are not touched upon here.

395 A simulation was made of the possible measurements of the anti-strange density (Fig. 1.5) using
 396 impact parameter tagging in ep CC scattering, and of the charm and beauty structure functions
 397 using c and b tagging in NC (Figs. 1.6, 1.7). The results served as input for the PDF study
 398 subsequently presented.

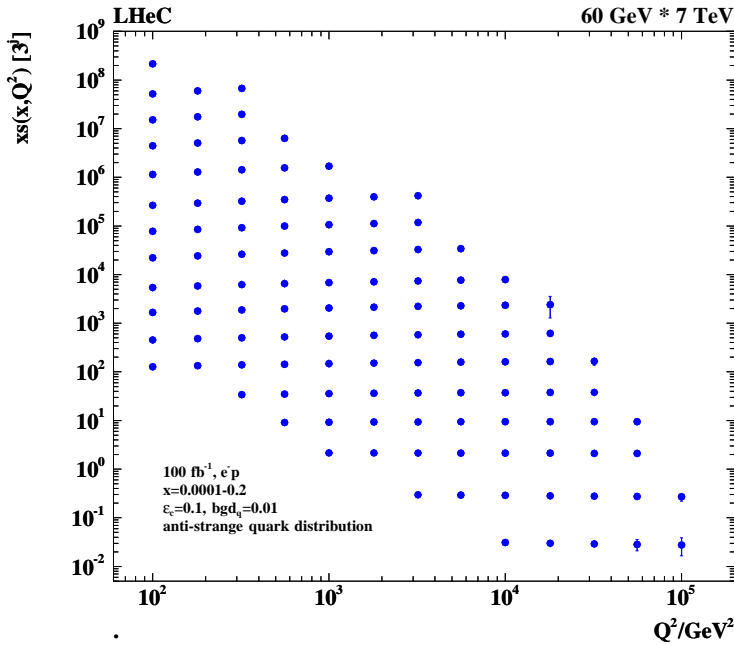


Figure 1.5: Simulation of the measurement of the (anti)-strange quark distribution, $x\bar{s}(x, Q^2)$, in charged current e^-p scattering through the t-channel reaction $W^- \bar{s} \rightarrow c$. The data are plotted with full systematic and statistical errors added in quadrature, mostly non-visible. The covered x range extends from 10^{-4} (top left bin), determined by the CC trigger threshold conservatively assumed to be at $Q^2 = 100 \text{ GeV}^2$, to $x \simeq 0.2$ (bottom right) determined by the forward tagging acceptance limits, which could be further extended by lowering E_p .

399 Following experience on heavy flavour tagging at HERA and ATLAS, assumptions were made
 400 on the charm and beauty tagging efficiencies, to be 10 % and 60 %, respectively. The light-quark
 401 background in the charm analysis is assumed to be controllable to per cent level, while the
 402 charm background in the beauty tagging sample is assumed to be 10 %. The tagging efficiencies
 403 and background contaminations affect the statistical error which for the assumed 100 fb^{-1} is
 404 negligible, apart from edges of phase space as the figures illustrate for all three distribution.

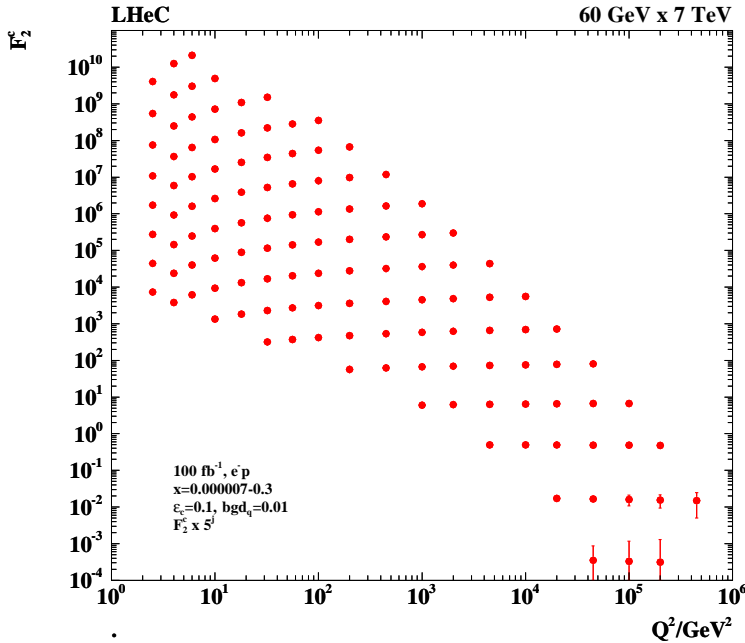


Figure 1.6: Simulation of the measurement of the charm quark distribution expressed as $F_2^c = e_c^2 x(c + \bar{c})$ in neutral current e^-p scattering. The data are plotted with full systematic and statistical errors added in quadrature, mostly invisible. The minimum x (left top bin) is at $7 \cot 10^{-6}$, and the data extend to $x = 0.3$ (right bottom bin). The simulation uses a massless scheme and is only indicative near threshold albeit the uncertainties entering the QCD PDF analysis are estimated consistently.

405 An additional uncorrelated systematic error is assumed in the simulated strange and beauty
406 quark measurements of 3% while for charm a 2% error is used. These errors determine the mea-
407 surement uncertainties in almost the full kinematic range. At higher Q^2 and x , these increase,
408 for example to 10, 5 and 7% for xs , xc and xb , respectively, at $x \simeq 0.1$ and $Q^2 \simeq 10^5 \text{ GeV}^2$.
409 As is specified in the figures, the x and Q^2 ranges of these measurements extend over 3, 5 and
410 4 orders of magnitude for s , c and b . The coverage of very high Q^2 values, much beyond M_Z^2 ,
411 permits to determine the c and b densities probed in γZ interference interactions for the first
412 time, which was not studied. At HERA, xs was not accessible while pioneering measurements
413 of xc and xb could be performed [31], albeit in a smaller range and with lesser precision than
414 shall be achieved with the LHeC. These measurements, as discussed below and in much detail
415 in the 2012 LHeC CDR [1], are of vital importance for the development of QCD and for the
416 interpretation of precision LHC data.

417 1.3 Parton Distributions from the LHeC

418 1.3.1 Procedure and Assumptions

419 In this section, PDF constraints from the simulation of LHeC inclusive NC and CC cross section
420 measurements and heavy quark densities are investigated. The analysis closely follows the one
421 for HERA as presented above.

422 The expectations on PDFs for the ‘‘LHeC final inclusive’’ dataset, corresponding to the com-
423 bination of datasets D4+D5+D6+D8, are presented see Tab.1.2. While this full combination

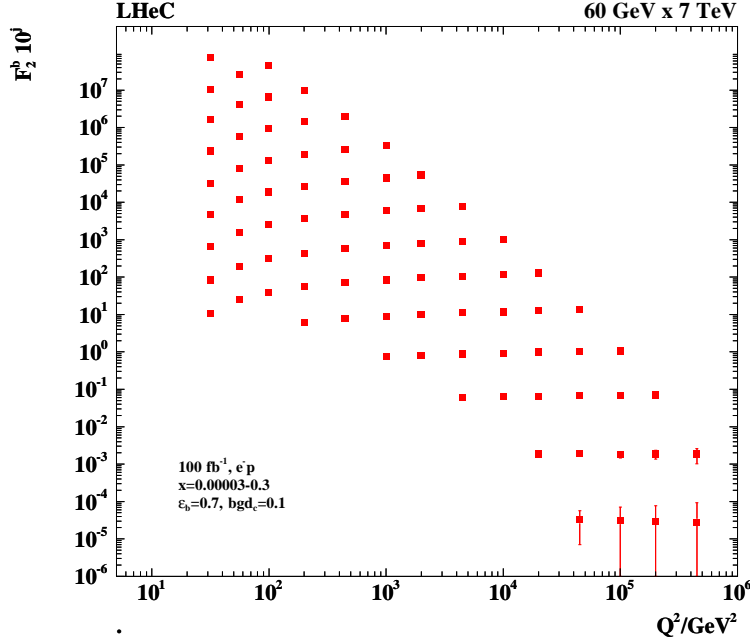


Figure 1.7: Simulation of the measurement of the bottom quark distribution expressed as $F_2^b = e_b^2 x(b+\bar{b})$ in neutral current e^-p scattering. The data are plotted with full systematic and statistical errors added in quadrature, mostly invisible. The minimum x (left top bin) is at $3 \cot 10^{-5}$, and the data extend to $x = 0.3$ (right bottom bin). The simulation uses a massless scheme and is only indicative near threshold albeit the uncertainties entering the QCD PDF analysis are estimated consistently.

424 is recorded concurrently to the HL-LHC operation, it will be available only after the end of
 425 HL-LHC, and will become valuable for re-analysis or re-interpretation of (HL-)LHC data, and
 426 for further future hadron colliders.

427 Given the expected timeline for the HL-LHC, it is of high relevance that the LHeC can deliver
 428 PDFs of transformative precision already on a short timescale, in order to be useful during the
 429 lifetime of the HL-LHC. Therefore, in the present study particular attention is paid on PDF
 430 constraints that are possible from the first 50 fb^{-1} of electron-proton data, which corresponds to
 431 the first three years of LHeC operation. The dataset is labelled D2 in Tab. 1.2 and also referred
 432 to as “LHeC 1st run” in the following.

433 Since even the initial instantaneous luminosity may exceed that of HERA significantly, and the
 434 kinematic range will largely be extended, the data recorded already during the initial weeks of
 435 data taking are highly valuable and will impose new PDF constraints, and these analyses will
 436 provide the starting point for the LHeC PDF programme. It may be recalled that the HERA I
 437 data period (1992-2000) provided just 0.1 fb^{-1} of data which was ample for discovering the rise
 438 of F_2 and of xg towards small x at low Q^2 . The sets in Tab. 1.2 comprise D1, with 5 fb^{-1} , still
 439 the tenfold of what H1 collected in 15 years, and D3, which resembles D2 but has the electron
 440 polarisation set to zero.

441 Additional dedicated studies of the impact of s, c, b data on the PDFs are then also presented,
 442 based on 10 fb^{-1} of e^-p simulated data. Note, the precision measurements of s, c, b final states
 443 are not exploited in the PDF “LHeC 1st run” study, which considers only inclusive NC/CC DIS
 444 data, although such data will be available from the initial operation.

445 Further important PDF constraints that would be provided by measurements of F_L and ep are

446 not considered in the present study. These remarks are significant in that they mean one has to
 447 be cautious when comparing the LHeC PDF potential with some global fits: F_L will resolve the
 448 low x non-linear parton interaction issue, see Sect. 2.2.3, and jets are important to pin down the
 449 gluon density behaviour at large x as well as providing a precision measurement of α_s , Sect. 2.1.

450 To assess the importance of different operating conditions, the impact of datasets with: differ-
 451 ing amounts of integrated luminosity (D1 vs. D4); positrons (D6 vs. D7); and with different
 452 polarisation states for the leptons (D3 vs. D8) are also considered.

453 In order to study the effects of the LHeC data on the knowledge of PDFs, fits to the simulated
 454 input datasets, including their full systematic uncertainties as detailed above, are performed in
 455 NLO QCD. Fits in NNLO have been performed as a cross check. The present analysis follows
 456 closely the HERA QCD fit procedure as outlined above. The parameterised PDFs are the valence
 457 distributions xu_v and xd_v , the gluon distribution xg , and the $x\bar{U}$ and $x\bar{D}$ distributions, where
 458 $x\bar{U} = x\bar{u}$, $x\bar{D} = x\bar{d} + x\bar{s}$, where the parametric functions as in eqs. 1.1 and 1.2 are used. The
 459 chosen fit parameters are similar, albeit to some extent more flexible, than for HERAPDF2.0
 460 due to the stronger constraints from the LHeC. In total 14 parameters are free for the nominal
 461 fits. Specifically, the following parameters are set free: $B_g, C_g, D_g, B_{uv}, C_{uv}, E_{uv}, B_{dv}, C_{dv}, A_{\bar{U}},$
 462 $B_{\bar{U}}, C_{\bar{U}}, A_{\bar{D}}, B_{\bar{D}}, C_{\bar{D}}$. Note, the B parameters for u_v and d_v , and the A and B parameters for \bar{U}
 463 and \bar{D} are fitted independently, such that the up and down valence and sea quark distributions
 464 are uncorrelated in the analysis, whereas for HERAPDF2.0 $x\bar{u} \rightarrow x\bar{d}$ as $x \rightarrow 0$ is imposed. The
 465 other main difference is that no negative gluon term has been included, i.e. $A'_g = 0$.

466 This ansatz is natural to the extent that the NC and CC inclusive cross sections determine
 467 the sums of up and down quark distributions, and their anti-quark distributions, as the four
 468 independent sets of PDFs, which may be transformed to the ones chosen if one assumes $u_v =$
 469 $U - \bar{U}$ and $d_v = D - \bar{D}$, i.e. the equality of anti- and sea-quark distributions of given flavour. For
 470 the majority of the QCD fits here presented, the strange quark distribution at Q_0^2 is assumed to
 471 be a constant fraction of \bar{D} , $x\bar{s} = f_s x\bar{D}$ with $f_s = 0.4$ as for HERAPDF, while this assumption
 472 is relaxed for the fits including simulated s, c, b data.

473 Note, that the prospects presented here are illustrations for a different era of PDF physics, which
 474 will be richer and deeper than one may be able to simulate now. For instance, without real data
 475 one cannot determine the actual parameterisation needed for the PDFs. In particular the low x
 476 kinematic region was so far unexplored and the simulated data relies on a simple extrapolation
 477 of nowadays PDFs, and no reliable data or model is available that provides constraints on this
 478 region⁵. The LHeC data explores new corners of phase space with high precision, and therefore
 479 it will have a great potential to determine the parameterisation, much larger than HERA had.
 480 As another example, with LHeC data one can directly derive relations for how the valence quarks
 481 are determined with a set of NC and CC cross section data in a redundant way, since the gluon
 482 distribution at small x can be determined from the Q^2 derivative of F_2 and from a measurement
 483 of F_L . The question of the optimal gluon parameterisation may then be settled by analysing
 484 these constraints and not by some specific behaviour of a given fit.

485 Furthermore, the precise direct determinations of s, c and b densities with measurements of the
 486 impact parameter of their decays, will put the treatment of heavy flavours in PDF analyses on
 487 a new level. The need for the phenomenological introduction of the f_s factor will disappear and
 488 the debate on the value of fixed and variable heavy flavour schemes will be settled.

⁵ It is expected that real LHeC data, and also the inclusion of further information such as F_L , will certainly lead to a quite different optimal parameterisation ansatz as was used in the present analysis. Though, it has been checked that with a more relaxed set of parameters, very similar results on the PDF uncertainties are obtained, which justifies the size of the prospected PDF uncertainties.

489 1.3.2 Valence Quarks

490 Since the first moments of DIS physics, it had been proposed to identify partons with quarks
 491 and to consider the proton to consist of valence quarks together with “an indefinite number of
 492 ($q\bar{q}$) pairs” [32]. 50 years later there are still basic questions unanswered about the behaviour of
 493 valence quarks, such as the d_v/u_v ratio at large x , and PDF fits struggle to resolve the flavour
 494 composition and interaction dynamics the sea. The LHeC is the most suited machine to resolve
 495 these challenges.

496 The precision that can be expected for the valence quark distributions from LHeC is illustrated
 497 in Fig. 1.8, and compared to a variety of modern PDF sets. Today, the knowledge of the valence
 498 quark distributions, particularly at large x , is fairly limited, as it can be derived from the Figure.
 499 This is due to the limited HERA luminosity, challenging systematics that rise $\propto 1/(1-x)$, and
 500 to nuclear correction uncertainties. At low x the valence quark distributions are very small
 compared to the sea quarks and cannot be separated easily from these.

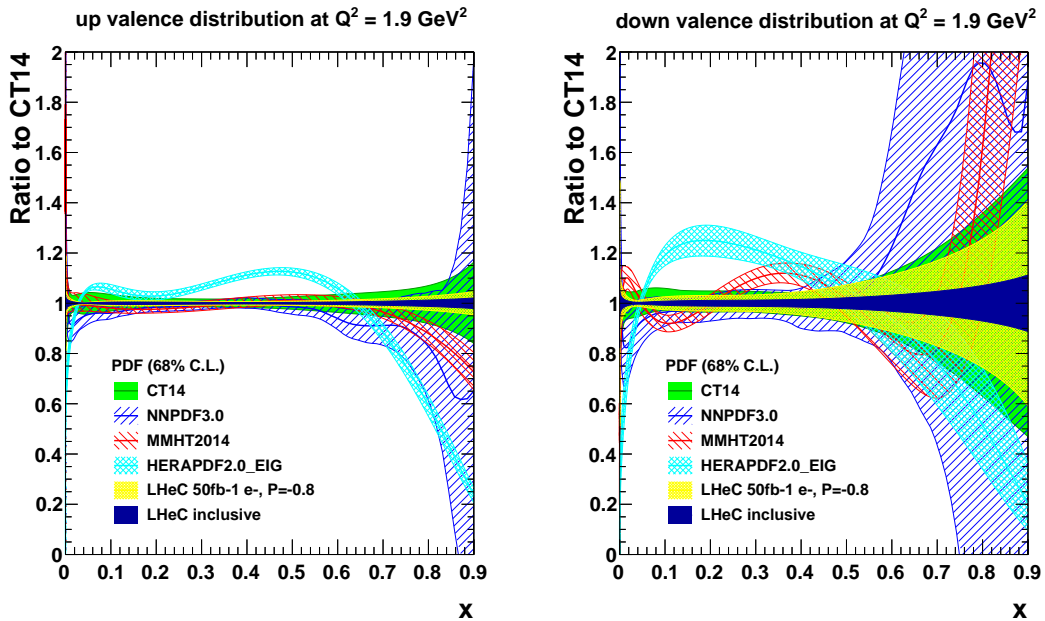


Figure 1.8: Valence quark distributions at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , presented as the ratio to the CT14 [33] central values. The yellow band corresponds to the “LHeC 1st run” PDFs (D2), while the dark blue shows the final “LHeC inclusive” PDFs based on the data sets (D4+D5+D6+D8), as described in Sec.1.3.1. For the purposes of illustrating the improvement to the uncertainties more clearly, the central value of the LHeC PDF has been scaled to the CT14 PDF, which itself is displayed by the green band. Note that the light blue HERAPDF2.0-EIG band corresponds to the experimental uncertainties only.

501

502 The u valence quark distribution is much better known than the d valence, since it enters with a
 503 four-fold weight in F_2 due to the electric quark charge ratio squared. Nevertheless, a substantial
 504 improvement in d_v by the LHeC is also visible, because the relative weight of d_v to u_v is changing
 505 favourably towards the down quark due to the influence of weak NC and CC interactions at high
 506 Q^2 where the LHeC is providing very accurate data. The strong constraints to the highest x
 507 valence distributions at LHeC are due to the very high integrated luminosity and large energy,
 508 and corresponding extension in kinematic reach of the data in x (and Q^2) in comparison to
 509 HERA. At the LHC, in contrast, the highest x are only accessible as convolutions with partons
 510 at lower x , and those can therefore not be well constrained.

511 Note that “LHeC 1st run” PDF, displayed by the yellow band in Fig. 1.8, includes only electron,
512 i.e. no positron, data. In fact, from the $e^\pm p$ cross section differences access to valence quarks at
513 low x can be obtained. As has already been illustrated in the CDR from 2012 [1] the sum of
514 $2u_v + d_v$ may be measured directly with the NC γZ interference structure function $x F_3^{\gamma Z}$ down
515 to $x \simeq 10^{-4}$ with very good precision. Thus LHeC will have a direct access to the valence quarks
516 at small x . This also tests the assumption of the equality of sea- and anti-quark densities which
517 if different would cause $x F_3^{\gamma Z}$ to rise towards small x .

518 The precise determinations of the valence quark distributions at large x have strong implications
for physics at the HL-LHC, in particular for BSM searches. The precise determinations of the

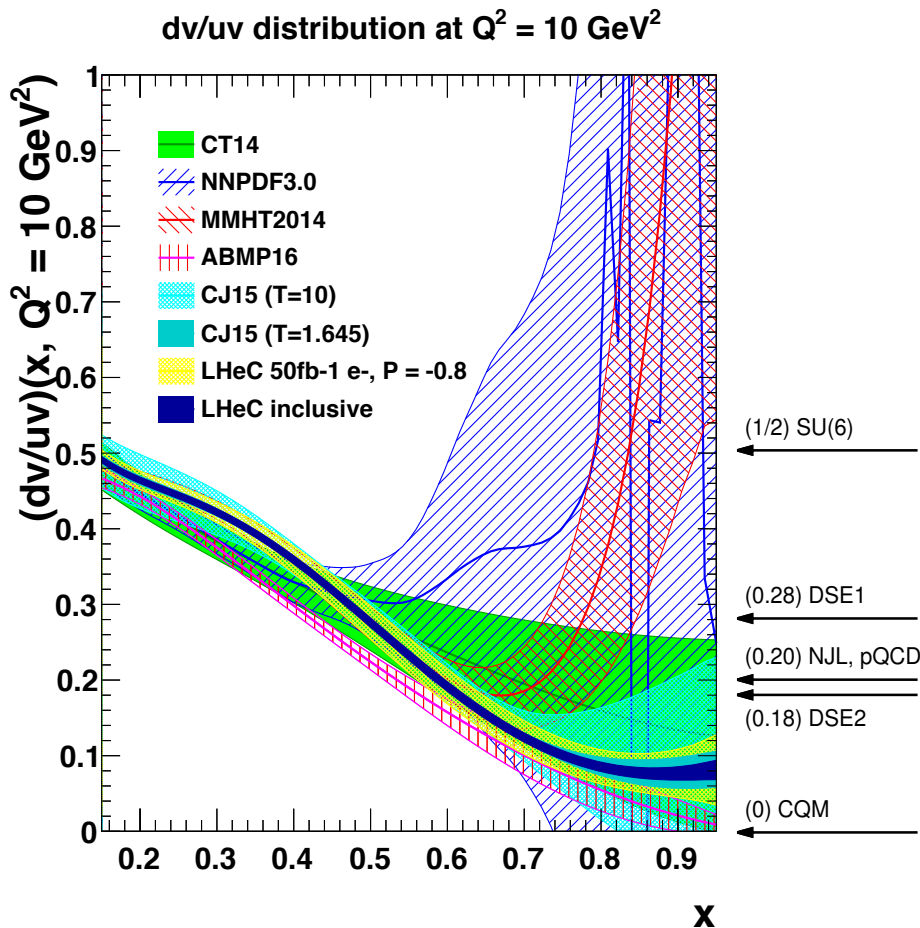


Figure 1.9: The d_v/u_v distribution at $Q^2 = 10 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x . The yellow band corresponds to the “LHeC 1st run” PDFs (D2), while the dark blue shows the final “LHeC inclusive” result. Both LHeC PDFs shown are scaled to the central value of CT14.

519 valence quarks will resolve the long standing mystery of the behaviour of the d/u ratio at large
520 x , see Fig. 1.9. As exemplarily shown in Fig. 1.9, there are currently conflicting theoretical
521 pictures for the central value of the d/u ratio, albeit the large uncertainty bands of the different
522 PDF mainly overlap. As of today, the constraints from data are inconclusive statistically and
523 also suffer from large nuclear uncertainties, and therefore cause those large uncertainties.

525 1.3.3 Light Sea Quarks

526 Our knowledge today about the anti-quark distributions is fairly poor and uncertainties are
 527 very large at smaller values of x , and also at highest x . In particular at low x , the size of the
 528 anti-quark PDFs are large and they contribute significantly to precision SM measurements at
 529 the HL-LHC. At high x , sea and valence need to be properly distinguished and accurately be
 530 measured for reliable BSM searches at high mass.

531 Our knowledge about the anti-quark PDFs will be changed completely with LHeC data. Pre-
 532 cise constraints are obtained with inclusive NC/CC DIS data despite the relaxation of any
 533 assumptions in the fit ansatz that would force $\bar{u} \rightarrow \bar{d}$ as $x \rightarrow 0$, as it is present in other PDF
 534 determinations today. At smaller Q^2 in DIS one measures essentially $F_2 \propto 4\bar{U} + \bar{D}$. At HERA,
 535 with limited precision at high Q^2 , thus one could not resolve the two parts, neither will that be
 536 possible at a other lower energy ep collider which is just not reaching small x . At the LHeC, in
 537 contrast, the CC DIS cross sections are measured very well down to x values even below 10^{-4} ,
 538 and in addition there are strong weak current contributions to the NC cross section which probe
 539 the favour composition differently than the photon exchange does. This enables this distinction
 540 of \bar{U} and \bar{D} at the LHeC.

541 The distributions of \bar{U} and \bar{D} for the PDFs from the 1st run and the “final inclusive LHeC
 542 data” are shown in Figs. 1.10 and 1.11 for $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ and $Q^2 = 10^4 \text{ GeV}^2$, respectively, and
 543 compared to present PDF analyses. One observes a striking increase in precision for both \bar{U} and
 544 \bar{D} which persists from the initial to the weak Q^2 scale. The relative uncertainty is large at high
 545 $x \geq 0.5$. However, in that region the sea-quark contributions are already very tiny. In the high
 546 x region one recognises the value of the full LHeC data sample fitted over the initial one while
 547 the uncertainties below $x \simeq 0.1$ of both the small and the full data sets are of comparable, very
 548 small size.

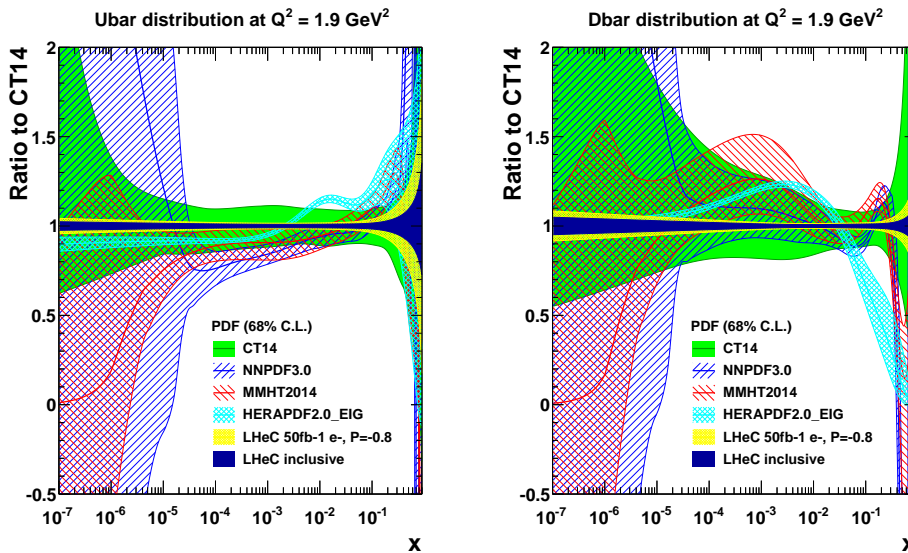


Figure 1.10: Sea quark distributions at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , presented as the ratio to the CT14 central values. The yellow band corresponds to the “LHeC 1st run” PDFs (D2), while the dark blue shows the final “LHeC inclusive” PDFs (D4+D5+D6+D8), as described in the text. Both LHeC PDFs shown are scaled to the central value of CT14. Note that the HERAPDF2.0-EIG band corresponds to the experimental uncertainties only.

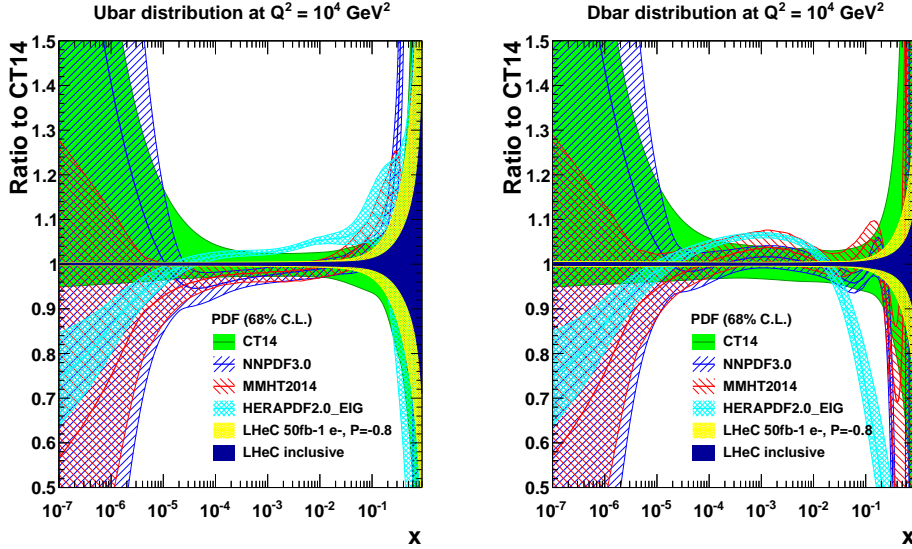


Figure 1.11: Sea quark distributions at $Q^2 = 10^4 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , presented as the ratio to the CT14 central values. The yellow band corresponds to the “LHeC 1st run” PDFs (D2), while the dark blue shows the final “LHeC inclusive” PDFs (D4+D5+D6+D8), as described in the text. Both LHeC PDFs shown are scaled to the central value of CT14. Note that the HERAPDF2.0-EIG band corresponds to the experimental uncertainties only.

549 1.3.4 Strange Quark

550 The determination of the strange PDF has generated significant controversy in the literature for
 551 more than a decade. Fixed-target neutrino DIS measurements [34–38] typically prefer a strange
 552 PDF that is roughly half of the up and down sea distribution; $\kappa = (s + \bar{s})/(\bar{u} + \bar{d}) \sim 0.5$. The
 553 recent measurements from the LHC [39–42] and related studies [43, 44] suggest a larger strange
 554 quark distribution, that may potentially even be larger than the up and down sea quarks. The
 555 x dependence of xs is essentially unknown, and it may differ from that of $x\bar{d}$, or $x(\bar{u} + \bar{d})$, by
 556 more than a normalisation factor.

557 The precise knowledge of the strange quark PDF is of high relevance, since it provides a signif-
 558 icant contribution to *standard candle* measurements at the HL-LHC, such as W/Z production,
 559 and it imposes a significant uncertainty on the W mass measurements at the LHC. The question
 560 of light-sea flavour ‘democracy’ is of principle relevance for QCD and the parton model. For the
 561 first time, as has been presented in Sect. 1.2.2, $x\bar{s}(x, Q^2)$ can be accurately measured, namely
 562 through the charm tagging $Ws \rightarrow c$ reaction in CC e^-p scattering at the LHeC. The inclusion of
 563 the CC charm data in the PDF analysis will settle the question of how strange the strange quark
 564 distribution really is ⁶. This prospect has been analysed within the LHeC fit framework here
 565 introduced and as well studied in detail in a profiling analysis using XFITTER. Both analyses
 566 yield rather compatible results and are presented in the following.

567 In the standard LHeC fit studies, the parameterised PDFs are the four quark distributions xu_v ,
 568 xd_v , $x\bar{U}$, $x\bar{D}$ and xg (constituting a 4+1 parameterisation), as the inclusive NC and CC data
 569 determine only the sums of the up and down quark and anti-quark distribution, as discussed
 570 previously. The strange quark PDF is then assumed to be a constant fraction of $x\bar{d}$.

⁶The provision of positron-proton data will enable very interesting tests of charge symmetry, i.e. permit to search for a difference between the strange and the anti-strange quark densities. This has not been studied in this paper.

571 With the strange quark data available, the LHeC PDF fit parameterisations can be extended
 572 to include $x\bar{s} = x\bar{s}$, parameterised as $A_s x^{B_s} (1-x)^{C_s}$ ⁷. For the fits presented in the following,
 573 the \bar{d} and \bar{s} are treated now separately, and therefore a total of five quark distributions are
 574 parameterised ($xu_v, xd_v, x\bar{U}, x\bar{d}, x\bar{s}$) as well as g . This provides a 5+1 parameterisation, and
 575 the total number of free parameters of the PDF fit then becomes 17.

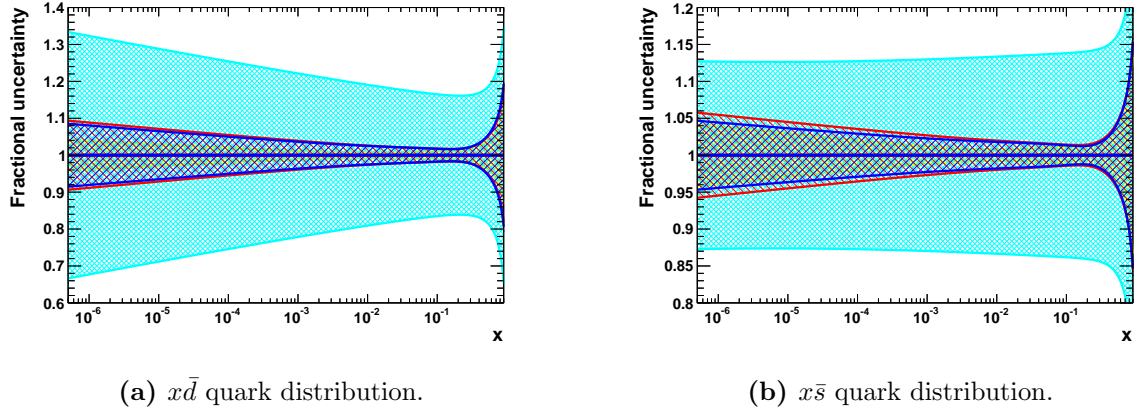


Figure 1.12: WILL PROBABLY BE REPLACED WITHOUT LIGHT BLUE PDF uncertainties at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x for the \bar{d} and \bar{s} distributions. The yellow band displays the uncertainties of the nominal “LHeC final inclusive” PDF, which was obtained in a 4+1 PDF fit. From the same dataset, results of the more flexible 5+1 fit (see text) are displayed as a cyan band. The red band displays the results, when in addition an LHeC measurement of the \bar{s} quark density is included. When even further including LHeC measurements of F_2^c and F_2^b , the PDF fits yields uncertainties as displayed by the blue band.

576 NEEDS CHAT WITH CLAIRE TO FINISH Results of the 5+1 PDF fits are shown in Fig. 1.12,
 577 where fits to inclusive NC/CC DIS data are displayed as reference (both for the 4+1 and
 578 5+1 ansatz) and the fits where in addition strange density measurements and even further
 579 measurements of $F_2^{c,b}$ are considered. As expected, the uncertainties of the 5+1 fit to the
 580 inclusive DIS data, especially on the \bar{d} and \bar{s} distributions (c.f. Fig. 1.12 bottom), become
 581 substantially larger in comparison to the respective 4+1 fit, since the \bar{d} and \bar{s} distributions are
 582 treated now separately. This demonstrates that the inclusive DIS data alone does not have the
 583 flavour separating power to determine the individual distributions very precisely.

584 When including an LHeC measurement of the \bar{s} quark density based on 10 fb^{-1} of e^-p data, the
 585 uncertainties on the \bar{d} and \bar{s} PDFs become significantly smaller. By chance, those uncertainties
 586 are then comparable to the 4+1 fit in which $x\bar{s}$ is linked by a constant fraction to $x\bar{d}$.

587 The constraints from a measurement of charm quark production cross sections in charged current
 588 DIS have also been studied in a profiling analysis using XFITTER [45]. The treatment of heavy
 589 quark production to higher orders pQCD is discussed extensively in this paper. At leading-order
 590 QCD, the subprocess under consideration is $W s \rightarrow c$, where the s represents an intrinsic strange
 591 quark. Fig. 1.13 displays the tight constraints obtained for the strange PDF when using the
 592 LHeC pseudo-data for the CC charm production channel. The results of this profiling analysis,
 593 both when based on the ABM16 and the NNPDF3.1 PDF sets, and of the direct fit presented
 594 above are very similar, reaching about 3 – 5% precision for x below $\simeq 0.01$

⁷ It is worth mentioning that the W,Z data [39] essentially determine only a moment of $x\bar{s}$ at $x \sim 0.02$, not the x dependence. Therefore, in analyses of HERA and ATLAS data such as Ref. [44], there is no determination attempted of the relevant parameter, B_s , which instead is set equal to $B_{\bar{d}}$. The kinematic dependence of $x\bar{s}$ is basically not determined by LHC data while the hint to the strange being unsuppressed has been persistent.

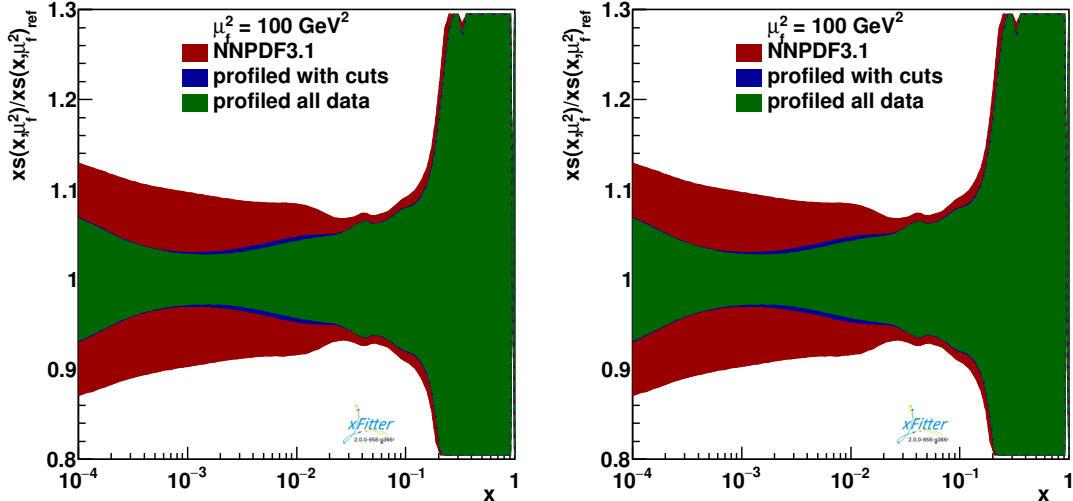


Figure 1.13: Constraints on the strange quark PDF xs using simulated data for charged-current production of charm quarks at the LHeC, from a profiling study [45] using the ABMP16 (left) TO COME and the NNPDF3.1 (right) PDF sets. The red band displays the nominal PDF uncertainties, and the green and blue bands the improved uncertainties due to the LHeC strange quark data.

595 In a variation of the study [45], a large reduction of uncertainties is already observed when
 596 restricting the input data to the kinematic range where the differences between the different
 597 heavy flavour schemes (VFNS and FFNS) are not larger than the present PDF uncertainties.
 598 This further indicates that the PDF constraints are stable and independent of the particular
 599 heavy-flavour scheme.

600 It may thus be concluded that the LHeC, through high luminosity, energy and precise kinematic
 601 reconstruction, will be able to solve a long standing question about the role of the strange-quark
 602 density in the proton, and its integration into a consistent QCD treatment of parton dynamics.

603 1.3.5 Heavy Quarks

604 One of the unsolved mysteries of the Standard Model is the existence of three generations of
 605 quarks and leptons. The strongly interacting fermion sector contains altogether six quarks with
 606 masses differing by up to five orders of magnitude. This hierarchy of masses is on one hand a
 607 challenge to explain, on the other hand it offers a unique opportunity to explore dynamics at
 608 a variety of different scales and thus develop different facets of strong interactions. While the
 609 light quarks at low scales are non-perturbative and couple strongly, the heavier quarks charm,
 610 bottom and top are separated from the soft sea by their masses and thus can serve as a suitable
 611 probe for the soft part of QCD.

612 There are a number of deep and unresolved questions that can be posed in the context of
 613 the proton structure: what is the individual contribution of the different quark flavours to the
 614 structure functions, are heavy quarks like charm and bottom radiatively generated or is there
 615 also an intrinsic heavy quark component in the proton, to what extent do the universality and
 616 factorisation theorems work in the presence of heavy quarks. It is therefore imperative to be
 617 able to perform precise measurements of each individual quark flavour and their contribution to
 618 the proton structure. The LHeC is the ideal place for these investigations because it resolves the
 619 complete flavour composition of the proton one by one. In particular, as shown in Sect. 1.2.2, the

620 LHeC provides data on F_2^c and F_2^b extending over nearly 5 and 6 orders of magnitude in x, Q^2 ,
621 respectively. These are obtained through charm and beauty tagging with high precision in NC
622 ep scattering. A thorough PDF analysis of the LHeC data thus can be based on the inclusive
623 NC/CC cross sections and tagged s, c, b data. In addition, one may use DIS jets, here used for
624 the α_s prospective study (Sect. 2.1) and low energy data, here analysed for resolving the low x
625 dynamics with a precision measurement of F_L (Sect. 2.2.3). The current studies in this chapter
626 therefore must be understood as indicative only as we have not performed a comprehensive
627 analysis using all these data as yet ⁸.

628 The production of heavy quarks at HERA (charm and bottom) is an especially interesting pro-
629 cess as the quark mass introduces a new scale ($m = m_{c,b}$) which was neither heavy or light (see
630 e.g. reviews [46, 47]). Actually, the treatment of heavy quark mass effects is essential in PDF
631 fits which include data from fixed target to collider energies and thus require the computation
632 of physical cross sections over a large range of perturbative scales μ^2 . With these scales passing
633 through (or close to) the thresholds for charm, bottom and, eventually, top, precise computa-
634 tions demand the incorporation of heavy quark mass effects close to threshold, $\mu^2 \sim m^2$, and the
635 resummation of collinear logarithms $\ln(\mu^2/m^2)$ at scales far above the threshold, $\mu^2 \gg m^2$. The
636 first problem can be dealt with through the use of massive matrix elements for the generation of
637 heavy quark-antiquark pairs but keeping a fixed number of parton densities (fixed flavour num-
638 ber schemes, FFNS). On the other hand, the proper consideration of resummation is achieved
639 through the use of variable flavour number schemes (VFNS) which consider an increasing num-
640 ber of massless parton species, evolved through standard DGLAP, when the scale is increased
641 above heavy quark mass thresholds. At present, calculations involving heavy quarks in DIS in
642 different schemes (generalised mass VFNS) with different numbers of active flavours participat-
643 ing to DGLAP evolution are combined to derive an expression for the coefficient functions which
644 is valid both close to threshold, and far above it. Such multi-scale problems are particularly
645 difficult, and numerous techniques were developed to cope with this challenging problem [48–57].
646 Additional complications, see e.g. Ref. [58], arise when the possibility of a non-perturbative ori-
647 gin of heavy quark distributions is allowed above the heavy quark mass threshold - intrinsic
648 heavy flavour. The ABMP16 analysis [59] underlines that the available DIS data are compatible
649 with solely an FFNS treatment assuming that the heavy quarks are generated in the final state.

650 At the LHeC, as illustrated in Figs. 1.6, 1.7, the large polar angle acceptance and the high
651 centre-of-mass energy allow heavy quark physics to be investigated from below threshold to
652 almost 10^6 GeV². The extended reach in comparison to HERA is dramatic. This permits to
653 comprehensively explore the *asymptotic* high energy limit where $m_{c,b}^2/Q^2 \rightarrow 0$, as well as the
654 low energy *decoupling* region $m_{c,b}^2/Q^2 \sim 1$.

655 For the PDF determination the obviously direct impact of the tagged charm and bottom data
656 will be on the determination of xc and xb , and the clarification of their appropriate theoretical
657 treatment. In addition, however, there is a remarkable improvement caused for the determination
658 of the gluon density, see Fig. 1.14. The determination of xg will be discussed in much more detail
659 in the following section.

660 These channels will also strongly improve the determination of the charm and bottom quark
661 masses and bring these uncertainties down to about $\delta m_{c(b)} \simeq 3(10)$ MeV [1] ⁹. These accuracies
662 are crucial for eliminating the corresponding model uncertainties in the PDF fit. Precision

⁸This is to be considered when one compares the precision of the inclusive PDF fits with so-called global analyses, for example regarding the behaviour of xg at large x .

⁹Such precision demands the availability of calculations with higher orders in pQCD, and those computations are already ongoing [60–62]. Note than in PDF fits the heavy quark mass is an effective parameter that has to be related with the pole mass, see e.g. Ref. [63] and refs. therein.

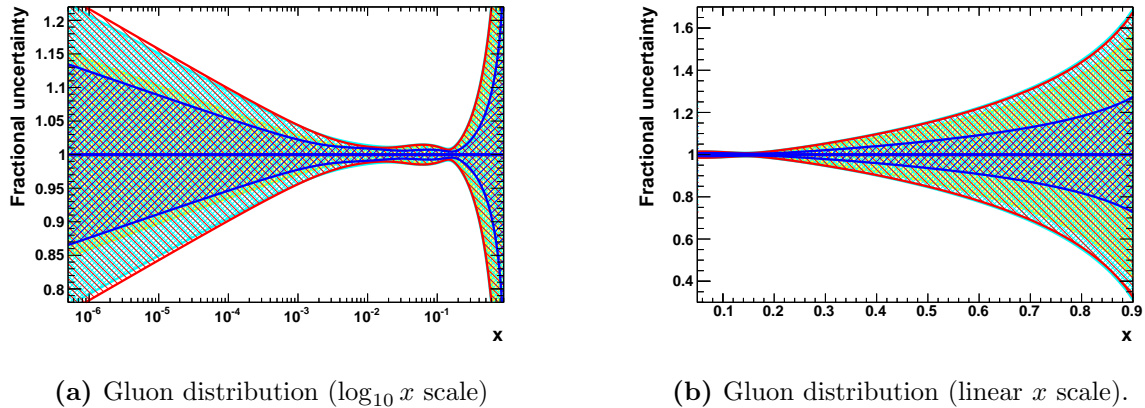


Figure 1.14: PDF uncertainties at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x to illustrate the constraints from additional heavy quark sensitive measurements at LHeC. Displayed is the gluon distribution on a logarithmic and linear scale. The yellow band illustrates the uncertainties of the nominal “LHeC final inclusive” PDF, obtained in a 4+1 PDF fit. The red band displays the results, when in addition an LHeC measurement of the $x\bar{s}$ quark density is included which obviously is uncorrelated to xg . When further including LHeC measurements of F_2^c and F_2^b , the PDF fits yields uncertainties as displayed by the blue band.

663 tagged charm and bottom data are also essential for the determination of the W -boson mass in
 664 pp , and the extraction of the Higgs $\rightarrow c\bar{c}$ and $b\bar{b}$ couplings in ep , as is discussed further below.

665 1.3.6 The Gluon PDF

666 The LHeC, with hugely increased precision and extended kinematic range of DIS, i.e. the
 667 most appropriate process to explore $xg(x, Q^2)$, can pin down the gluon distribution much more
 668 accurately than it is known today. This primarily comes from the extension of range and
 669 precision in the measurement of $\partial F_2 / \partial \ln Q^2$, which at small x is a direct measure of xg . The
 670 precision determination of the quark distributions, discussed previously, also strongly constrains
 671 xg . Further sensitivity arises with the high- y part of the NC cross section which is controlled
 672 by the longitudinal structure function as is discussed in Sect. 2.2.3.

673 The result for the gluon distribution from the LHeC inclusive NC/CC data fits is presented in
 674 Fig. 1.15, and compared to several other PDF sets. On the left, the distribution is presented
 675 as a ratio to CT14, and is displayed on a $\log-x$ scale to highlight the small x region. On the
 676 right, the xg distribution is shown on a linear- x scale, accentuating the region of large x . The
 677 determination of xg will be radically improved with the LHeC NC and CC precision data, which
 678 provide constraints on $\partial F_2 / \partial \ln Q^2$ down to very low x values, $\geq 10^{-5}$, and large $x \leq 0.8$.

679 Below $x \simeq 5 \cdot 10^{-4}$, the HERA data have almost vanishing constraining power due to kinematic
 680 range limitations, as one needs a lever arm to determine the Q^2 derivative, and so the gluon
 681 is simply not determined at lower x . This can be seen in all modern PDF sets. With the
 682 LHeC, a precision of a few per cent at small x becomes possible down to nearly 10^{-5} . This
 683 should resolve the question of non-linear parton interactions at small x (cf. Sect. 2.2). It also
 684 has direct implications for the LHC (and even stronger for the FCC): with the extension of the
 685 rapidity range to about 4 at the HL-LHC by ATLAS and CMS, Higgs physics will become small
 686 x physics for which xg must be known very accurately since $gg \rightarrow H$ is the dominant production
 687 mechanism.

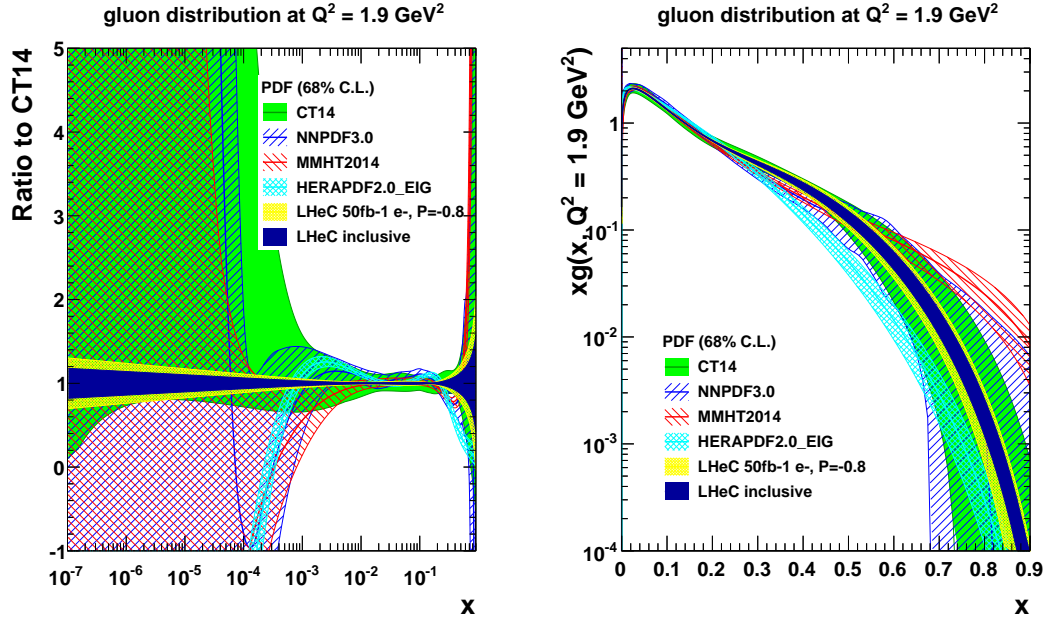


Figure 1.15: Gluon distribution at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , highlighting (left) the low x and (right) the high x regions. The yellow band corresponds to the “LHeC 1st run” PDFs (D2), while the dark blue shows the “LHeC final inclusive” PDFs (D4+D5+D6+D8), as described in the text. Both LHeC PDFs shown are scaled to the central value of CT14. The smooth extension of the LHeC xg uncertainty bands below $x \simeq 10^{-5}$ is an artefact of the parameterisation. Note that the HERAPDF2.0-EIG band corresponds to the experimental uncertainties only.

688 At large $x \geq 0.3$ the gluon distribution becomes very small and large variations appear in its
689 determination from several PDF groups, differing by orders of magnitude. That is related to
690 uncertainties on jet measurements, theoretical uncertainties, and the fact that HERA did not
691 have sufficient luminosity to cover the high x region where, moreover, the sensitivity to xg
692 diminishes, since the valence quark evolution is insensitive to it. For the LHeC, the sensitivity
693 at large x comes as part of the overall package: large luminosity allowing access to x values close
694 to 1, fully constrained quark distributions and strong constraints at small x which feed through
695 to large x via the momentum sum rule. The high precision illustrated will be crucial for BSM
696 searches at high scales. It is also important for testing QCD factorisation and scale choices, as
697 well as pinning down electroweak effects.

698 The analysis presented here has not made use of the additional information that can be provided
699 at the LHeC in measurements of $F_2^{c,b}$ (see Sec 1.3.5) or F_L . The large x situation can be expected
700 to further improve by using LHeC jet data, providing further, direct constraints at large x which,
701 however, have not yet been studied in comparable detail.

702 The LHeC is the ideal laboratory to resolve all unknowns of the gluon density, which is the origin
703 for all visible mass, and one of the particular secrets of particle physics for the gluon cannot
704 directly be observed but is confined inside hadrons. It is obvious that resolving this puzzle is an
705 energy frontier DIS task and goal, including electron-ion scattering since the gluon inside heavy
706 matter is known even much less. Therefore, the special importance of this part of high energy
707 PDF physics is not primarily related to the smallness of uncertainties: it is about a consistent
708 understanding and resolution of QCD at all regions of spatial and momentum dimensions which
709 the LHeC will explore, and later the FCC-eh too.

710 1.3.7 PDF determinations with different datasets

711 It is informative to study the transition of the PDF uncertainties from the “LHeC 1st run”
712 PDFs, which exploits only a single electron-proton dataset, D2, through to the “LHeC final
713 inclusive” PDFs, which makes use of the full datasets D4+D5+D7+D8. Various intermediate
714 PDF fits are performed using subsets of the datasets summarised in Tab. 1.2. The results are
715 illustrated in Figs. 1.16 and 1.17, which show the distributions of the: (a) u_v , (b) d_v , (c)–(d)
716 gluon, and (e)–(f) sea quarks.

717 The impact of the increasing amount of integrated luminosity of e^-p data is illustrated in
718 Fig. 1.16 by the transition from the blue \rightarrow yellow \rightarrow red bands. It is observed, that the
719 small and medium- x regions are *quickly* constrained, even with only 5 fb^{-1} . This corresponds
720 to approximately the 1st year of LHeC operation. In contrast, the high x region considerably
721 benefits from increased luminosity. In comparison to the analogous HERA fit, it becomes clear,
722 that the vast majority of the gain comes already from the first 50 fb^{-1} .

723 The impact on the PDF uncertainties when adding additionally positron data to the fits is
724 illustrated in Fig. 1.17. In both cases the positron data is added to the baseline “LHeC 1st run”
725 dataset. It is observed, that the addition of even a small amount of positrons does bring benefits.
726 This is most prominent for the d -valence PDF, and primarily due to the sensitivity gained via
727 the CC cross section of the positron data.

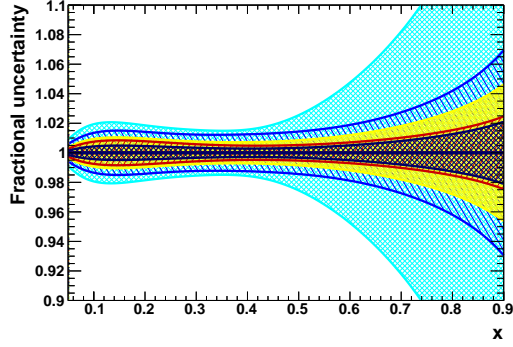
728 PDF fits including LHeC simulated data with different electron-polarisations were also studied,
729 and found to have only a small impact on the PDF determination. Potential benefits are primar-
730 ily from the overall increase (decrease) in inclusive CC cross section for negatively (positively)
731 polarised electrons, as this scales linearly with the electron beam polarisation. However, while
732 the impact for PDFs may be small, the datasets with both negatively and positively polarised
733 leptons are important for the electroweak programme of the LHeC, as described in Sect. 3.1.

734 1.4 Parton-Parton Luminosities

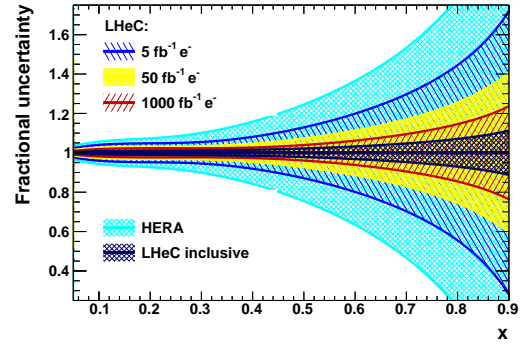
735 The LHeC will cover a hitherto not accessible kinematic region and spans almost six orders of
736 magnitude in x as well as in Q^2 . The measurements at the LHeC allow to significantly improve
737 the precision determination of quark and gluon PDFs of the proton and their analysis will
738 substantially deepen our understanding of the QCD theory in extreme kinematic limits. The
739 resulting PDFs will be further of fundamental importance for future studies of SM processes
740 and BSM discoveries at hadron colliders.

741 The PDF programme of the LHeC is of unprecedented depth for the following reasons.

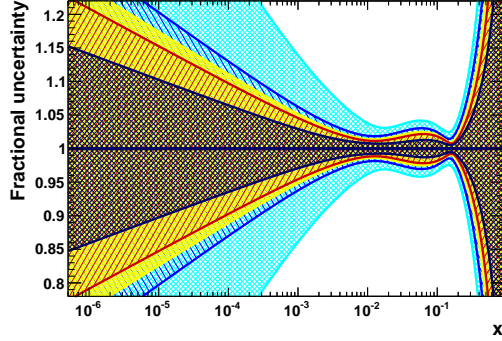
- 742 • The LHeC will provide a complete unfolding of the quark and gluon PDFs in both the
743 large and small x regions and thus will resolve the partonic structure of the proton for
744 the first time completely. So, the u_v , d_v , u , d , s , c , b and even the top and of course
745 the gluon momentum distributions are determined through the inclusive NC and CC DIS
746 cross section and direct heavy quark measurements in the full accessible kinematic range,
747 from below $x = 10^{-6}$ up to $x = 0.9$ and in Q^2 up to nearly $4E_e E_p = 1.4 \cdot 10^6 \text{ GeV}^2$.
- 748 • Because at high energy the CC DIS cross section becomes as large as the NC one, no
749 other data will be required for the analyses, besides dedicated LHeC measurements of the
750 strange, charm and bottom quark densities with impact parameter tags.



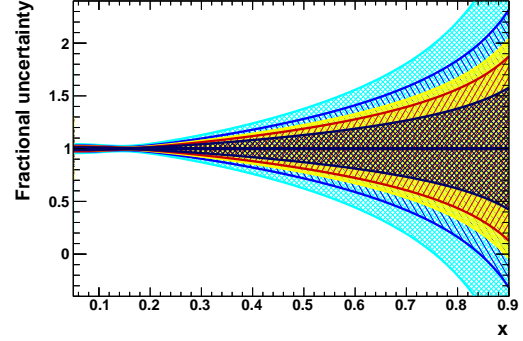
(a) u -valence distribution.



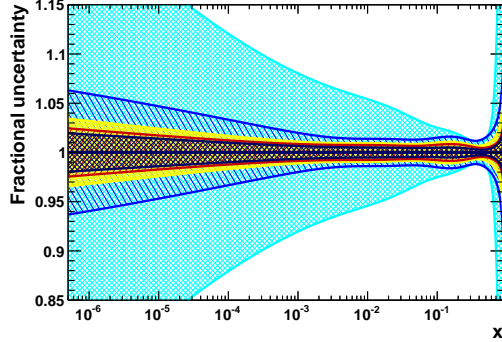
(b) d -valence distribution.



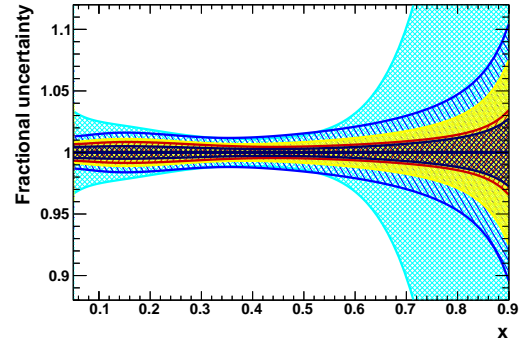
(c) Gluon distribution ($\log_{10} x$ scale).



(d) Gluon distribution (linear x scale).

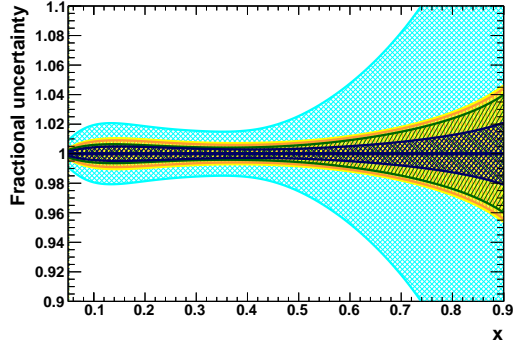


(e) Sea quark distribution ($\log_{10} x$ scale).

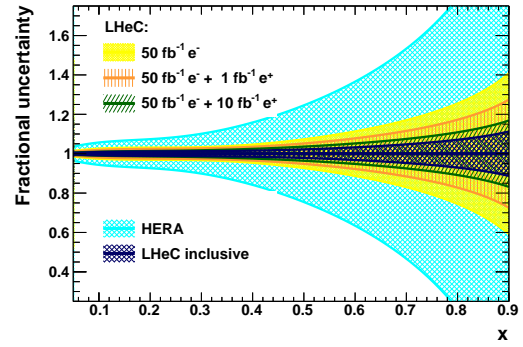


(f) Sea quark distribution (linear x scale).

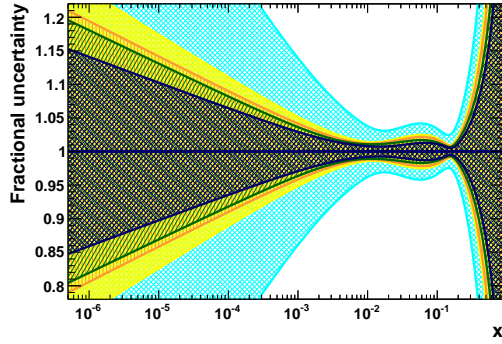
Figure 1.16: PDF distributions at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , illustrating the impact of different amounts of integrated luminosity. The blue, yellow and red bands correspond to LHeC PDFs using electron-only NC and CC inclusive measurements with 5, 50 and 1000 fb^{-1} (datasets D1, D2 and D4), respectively. The yellow band is therefore equivalent to the “LHeC 1st run” PDF. For reference, the dark blue band shows the results of the final “LHeC inclusive” PDF. For comparison, the cyan band represents an identical PDF fit using HERA combined inclusive NC and CC data [13], rather than LHeC simulated data.



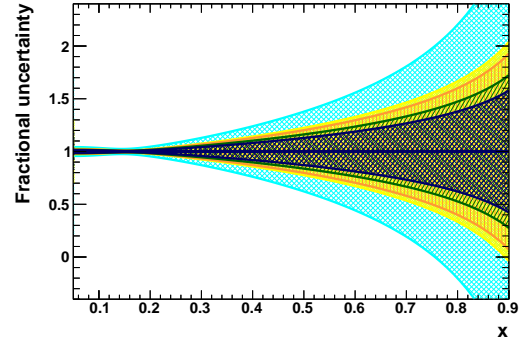
(a) u -valence distribution.



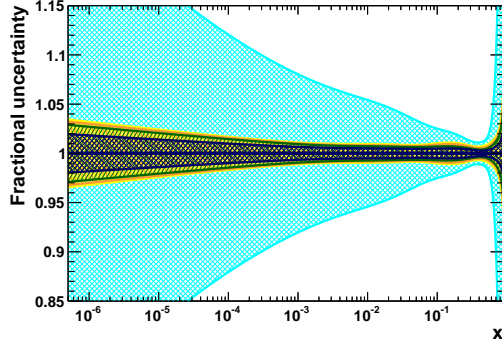
(b) d -valence distribution.



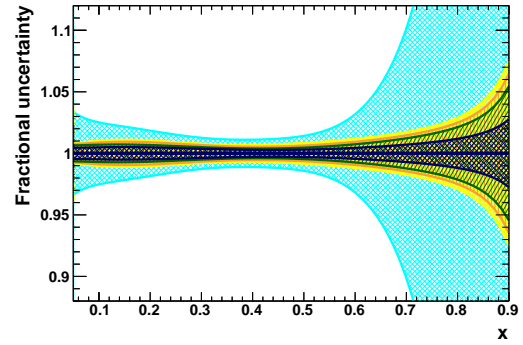
(c) Gluon distribution ($\log_{10} x$ scale).



(d) Gluon distribution (linear x scale).



(e) Sea quark distribution ($\log_{10} x$ scale).



(f) Sea quark distribution (linear x scale).

Figure 1.17: PDF distributions at $Q^2 = 1.9 \text{ GeV}^2$ as a function of x , illustrating the impact of including positron data. The yellow (“LHeC 1st run”) and dark blue (“LHeC final inclusive”) and cyan bands (HERA data) are as in Fig. 1.16. The orange band corresponds to a fit with 1 fb^{-1} of inclusive NC and CC positron-proton data, in addition to 50 fb^{-1} of electron-proton data (D2+D6), while the green band is similar, but with 10 fb^{-1} of positron-proton data (D2+D7).

- 751 • A thousand-fold increase of the HERA luminosity, unprecedented precision from advanced
752 detector technologies and the redundant evaluation of the event kinematics from the lepton
753 and hadron final state components will lead to extremely large precision of the data and
754 thus of the PDFs. Also, technically important, this enables the fixation of the various
755 PDF analysis parameters from the LHeC data themselves.
- 756 • It was demonstrated, that critical improvements of the PDFs and a substantial reduction
757 of the uncertainties can be obtained already from the initial 3-year run.
- 758 • The precision LHeC measurements, yield more precise PDFs than those from present HL-
759 LHC prospects. When combined with the concurrently operating HL-LHC, it will provide
760 the most accurate extrapolation of the PDFs into the large energy region.
- 761 • Because of the cleanliness of inclusive DIS no theoretical limitations from higher twists,
762 hadronisation, nor nuclear uncertainties are present for PDF analyses from LHeC data

763 Given the impressive theoretical progress on pQCD, one will have these PDFs available to at
764 least [60] N³LO. This is important to reduce scale uncertainties but as well for a coherent
765 analysis, for example of Higgs production at the LHC which has already been calculated to
766 N³LO. For QCD, this will resolve many open issues (and probably create new ones) such as
767 on the correct value of α_s , discussed below, the question on the persistence (or not) of linear
768 parton evolution at small x and, as mentioned, it will also decisively test whether factorisation
769 holds or not between DIS and Drell-Yan scattering. The LHeC PDF programme will offer novel
770 tests of QCD, of data consistency from different collider experiments, of improved searches for
771 new particles at high mass through indirect constraints, possibly non-resonant, etc. indeed, the
772 LHeC is the cleanest microscope for resolving the dynamics and structure of matter which may
773 be built during the coming decade. It will open a thoroughly new phase of PDF and QCD
774 physics.

775 **unrelated text fragments:**

776 Since no other experiment is needed, this means, the LHeC will indeed provide a unique and
777 complete base for PDFs, for predictions, discovery and novel tests of theory.

778 The fits are extended to the lowest x for illustration, even though at such low- x values non-linear
779 effects are expected to appear, eventually altering the evolution laws, see Sec. 2.2.2.

780 **move to ? Note also that such a determination is free from higher twist corrections, which plague**
781 **all fixed target data, and from nuclear uncertainties as the $u - d$ distinction at LHeC is achieved**
782 **in high luminosity, high Q^2 ep scattering only.**

783 **drop?** Other lepton-nucleon DIS experiments, such as the EIC, miss the low x as well as the
784 high Q^2 region by one to two orders of magnitude as even compared to HERA and those can
785 therefore not solve the problem of non-DGLAP evolution and cannot separate different flavours
786 reliably. The LHeC PDF programme makes full use of the weak interactions in NC and CC. This
787 enables a complete separation of flavour contributions, which would otherwise not be possible,
788 or with data only from fixed target experiments on F_2 .

789 1.5 The 3D Structure of the Proton

790 As is evident from the discussion in the previous Sections, the LHeC machine will be able to
791 measure the collinear parton distribution functions with unprecedented accuracy in its extended

792 range of x and Q^2 . Thus, it will provide a new insight into the details of the one-dimensional
793 structure of the proton and nuclei, including novel phenomena at low x . In addition to collinear
794 dynamics, the LHeC opens a new window into proton and nuclear structure by allowing a precise
795 investigation of the partonic structure in more than just the one dimension of the longitudinal
796 momentum. Precision DIS thus gives access to multidimensional aspects of hadron structure.
797 This can be achieved by accurately measuring processes with more exclusive final states like pro-
798 duction of jets, semi-inclusive production of hadrons and exclusive processes, in particular the
799 elastic diffractive production of vector mesons and deeply virtual Compton (DVCS) scattering.
800 These processes have the potential to provide information not only on the longitudinal distribu-
801 tion of partons in the proton or nucleus, but also on the dependence of the parton distribution
802 on transverse momenta and momentum transfer. Therefore, future, high precision DIS machines
803 like the LHeC or the Electron Ion Collider (EIC) in the US [64], open a unique window into the
804 details of the 3D structure of hadrons.

805 The most general quantity that can be defined in QCD that would contain very detailed infor-
806 mation about the partonic content of the hadron, is the Wigner distribution [65]. This function
807 $W(x, \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{b})$ is a 1+4 dimensional function. One can think of it as the mother or master parton
808 distribution, from which lower-dimensional distributions can be obtained. In the definition of
809 the Wigner function, \mathbf{k} is the transverse momentum of the parton and \mathbf{b} is the 2-dimensional
810 impact parameter, which can be defined as a Fourier conjugate to the momentum transfer of
811 the process. The other, lower dimensional parton distributions can be obtained by integrating
812 out different variables. Thus, transverse momentum dependent (TMD) parton distributions
813 (or unintegrated parton distribution functions) $f_{\text{TMD}}(x, \mathbf{k})$ can be obtained by integrating out
814 the impact parameter \mathbf{b} in the Wigner function, while the generalised parton densities (GPD),
815 $f_{\text{GPD}}(x, \mathbf{b})$, can be obtained from the Wigner function through the integration over the trans-
816 verse momentum \mathbf{k} . In the regime of small x , or high energy, a suitable formalism is that of
817 the dipole picture [66–71], where the fundamental quantity which contains the details of the
818 partonic distribution is the dipole amplitude $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b})$. This object contains the dependence
819 on the impact parameter \mathbf{b} as well as another transverse size \mathbf{r} , the dipole size, which can be
820 related to the transverse momentum of the parton \mathbf{k} through a Fourier transform. The impor-
821 tant feature of the dipole amplitude is that it should obey the unitarity limit $N \leq 1$. The dipole
822 amplitude N within this formalism can be roughly interpreted as a Wigner function in the high
823 energy limit, as it contains information about the spatial distribution of the partons in addition
824 to the dependence on the longitudinal momentum fraction x .

825 Detailed simulations of elastic J/ψ vector meson production were performed for the LHeC
826 kinematic region and beyond [1], using the formalism of the dipole picture. This particular
827 process is shown in Fig. 1.18, left plot. The proton is scattered elastically with momentum
828 transfer t , and the vector meson is produced, which is separated from the final state proton
829 by a rapidity gap. Of particular importance is the measurement of the t slope of this process,
830 since it can be related directly to the impact parameter distribution and is thus sensitive to the
831 transverse variation of the partonic density in the target. The first type of analysis like this,
832 in the context of elastic scattering, was performed by Amaldi and Schubert [72], where it was
833 demonstrated that the Fourier transform of the elastic cross section yields access to the impact
834 parameter profile of the scattering amplitude. This method can be used in the context of vector
835 meson scattering in DIS, where the transverse distribution of partons, in the perturbative regime,
836 can be extracted through the appropriate Fourier transform [73]. The additional advantage of
837 studying diffractive vector meson production is the fact that the partonic distributions can be
838 studied as a function of the hard scale in this process given by the mass of the vector meson M_V^2
839 in the photoproduction case or Q^2 (or more precisely a combination of Q^2 and M_V^2) in the case

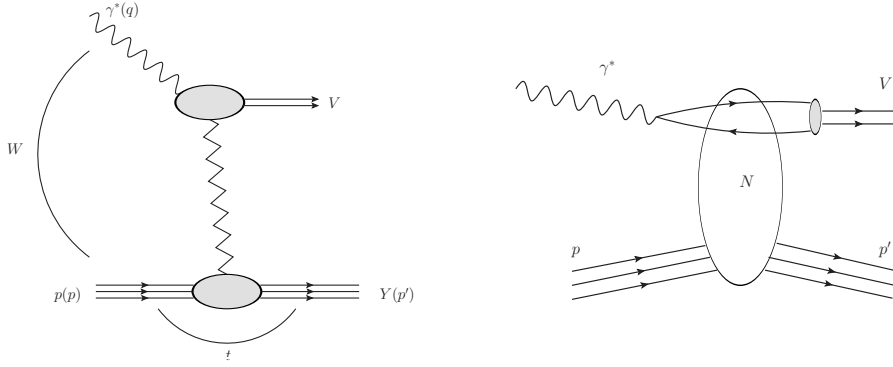


Figure 1.18: Left: diagram for the quasi-elastic production of the vector meson. Right: schematic illustration of the same process, quasi-elastic vector meson production, within the framework of the dipole picture. The initial virtual photon, fluctuates into a quark-antiquark pair which then scatters off the hadronic target and forms the vector meson. The details of the hadronic interaction of the dipole with the target are encoded in the dipole amplitude N .

840 of the diffractive DIS production of vector mesons, as well as the energy W of the photon-proton
 841 system available in the process which is closely related to x .

842 The differential cross section for elastic vector meson production can be expressed in the following
 843 form:

$$\frac{d\sigma^{\gamma^* p \rightarrow J/\psi p}}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi} |\mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta)|^2, \quad (1.3)$$

844 where the amplitude for the process of elastic diffractive vector meson production in the high
 845 energy limit, in the dipole picture, is given by

$$\mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta) = \sum_{h\bar{h}} \int d^2\mathbf{r} \int dz \Psi_{h\bar{h}}^*(z, \mathbf{r}, Q) \mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta) \Psi_{h\bar{h}}^V(z, \mathbf{r}). \quad (1.4)$$

846 In the above formula, $\Psi_{h\bar{h}}^*(z, \mathbf{r}, Q)$ is the photon wave function which describes the splitting
 847 of the virtual photon γ^* into a $q\bar{q}$ pair. This wave function can be calculated in perturbative
 848 QCD. The function $\Psi_{h\bar{h}}^V(z, \mathbf{r})$ is the wave function of the vector meson. Finally, $\mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta)$ is the
 849 dipole amplitude which contains all the information about the interaction of the quark-antiquark
 850 dipole with the target. The formula (1.4) can be interpreted as the process of fluctuation of the
 851 virtual photon into a $q\bar{q}$ pair, which subsequently interacts with the target through the dipole
 852 amplitude \mathcal{N} and then forms the vector meson, given by the amplitude Ψ^V , see Fig. 1.18, right
 853 plot. The two integrals in the definition Eq. (1.4) are performed over the dipole size which is
 854 denoted by \mathbf{r} , and z which is the longitudinal momentum fraction of the photon carried by the
 855 quark. The scattering amplitude depends on the value of the momentum transfer Δ , which is
 856 related to the Mandelstam variable $t = -\Delta^2$. The sum is performed over the helicity states of
 857 the quark and antiquark.

858 The dipole amplitude $\mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta)$ can be related to the dipole amplitude in coordinate space
 859 through the appropriate Fourier transform

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = \int d^2\Delta e^{i\Delta \cdot \mathbf{b}} \mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta). \quad (1.5)$$

860 We stress that \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{b} are two different transverse sizes here. The dipole size \mathbf{r} is conjugate
 861 to the transverse momentum of the partons \mathbf{k} , whereas the impact parameter is roughly the

862 distance between the centre of the scattering target to the centre-of-mass of the quark-antiquark
 863 dipole and is related to the Fourier conjugate variable, the momentum transfer Δ .

864 The dipole amplitude $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b})$ contains rich information about the dynamics of the hadronic
 865 interaction. It is a 5-dimensional function and it depends on the longitudinal momentum frac-
 866 tion, and two two-dimensional coordinates. The dependence on the longitudinal momentum
 867 fraction is obviously related to the evolution with the centre-of-mass energy of the process,
 868 while the dependence on \mathbf{b} provides information about the spatial distribution of the partons in
 869 the target. The dipole amplitude is related to the distribution of gluons in impact parameter
 870 space. The dipole amplitude has a nice property that its value should be bounded from above
 871 by the unitarity requirement $N \leq 1$. The complicated dependence on energy, dipole size and
 872 impact parameter of this amplitude can provide a unique insight into the dynamics of QCD,
 873 and on the approach to the dense partonic regime. Besides, from Eqs. (1.3),(1.4) and (1.5) it
 874 is evident that the information about the spatial distribution in impact parameter \mathbf{b} is related
 875 through the Fourier transform to the dependence of the cross section on the momentum transfer
 876 $t = -\Delta^2$.

877 To see how the details of the distribution, and in particular the approach to unitarity, can
 878 be studied through the VM elastic production, calculations based on the dipole model were
 879 performed [74], and extended to energies which can be reached at the LHeC as well as the
 880 FCC-eh. The parameterisations used in the calculation were the so-called IP-Sat [75, 76] and
 881 b-CGC [77] models. In both cases the impact parameter dependence has to be modelled
 882 phenomenologically. In the IP-Sat model the dipole amplitude has the following form

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = 1 - \exp \left[-\frac{\pi^2 r^2}{2N_c} \alpha_s(\mu^2) x g(x, \mu^2) T_G(b) \right], \quad (1.6)$$

883 where $xg(x, \mu^2)$ is the collinear gluon density, evolved using LO DGLAP (without quarks), from
 884 an initial scale μ_0^2 up to the scale μ^2 set by the dipole size $\mu^2 = \frac{4}{r^2} + \mu_0^2$. $\alpha_s(\mu^2)$ is the strong
 885 coupling. The parameterisation of the gluon density at the initial scale μ_0^2 is given by

$$xg(x, \mu_0^2) = A_g x^{-\lambda_g} (1-x)^{5.6}, \quad (1.7)$$

886 and the impact parameter profile for the gluon by

$$T_G(b) = \frac{1}{2\pi B_G} \exp(-b^2/2B_G). \quad (1.8)$$

An alternative parameterisation is given by the b-CGC model [77] which has the form

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = \begin{cases} N_0 \left(\frac{rQ_s}{2} \right)^{2\gamma_{\text{eff}}} & \text{for } rQ_s \leq 2, \\ 1 - \exp(-\mathcal{A} \ln^2(\mathcal{B}rQ_s)) & \text{for } rQ_s > 2. \end{cases} \quad (1.9)$$

887 Here the effective anomalous dimension γ_{eff} and the saturation scale Q_s of the proton explicitly
 888 depend on the impact parameter and are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_{\text{eff}} &= \gamma_s + \frac{1}{\kappa \lambda \ln 1/x} \ln \left(\frac{2}{rQ_s} \right), \\ Q_s(x, b) &= \left(\frac{x_0}{x} \right)^{\lambda/2} \exp \left[-\frac{b^2}{4\gamma_s B_{\text{CGC}}} \right] \text{ GeV}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.10)$$

889 where $\kappa = \chi''(\gamma_s)/\chi'(\gamma_s)$, with $\chi(\gamma)$ being the leading-logarithmic BFKL kernel eigenvalue
 890 function [78]. The parameters \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{B} in Eq.(1.9) are determined uniquely from the matching

891 of the dipole amplitude and its logarithmic derivatives at the limiting value of $r q_s = 2$. The
 892 b-CGC model is constructed by smoothly interpolating between two analytically known limiting
 893 cases [77], namely the solution of the BFKL equation in the vicinity of the saturation line for
 894 small dipole sizes $r < 2/Q_s$, and the solution of the BK equation deep inside the saturation
 895 region for large dipole sizes $r > 2/Q_s$.

896 The parameters μ_0, A_g, λ_g of the IP-Sat model and $N_0, \gamma_s, x_0 \lambda$ of the b-CGC model were fitted
 897 to obtain the best description of the inclusive data for the structure function F_2 at HERA. The
 898 slope parameters B_g and B_{CGC} , which control the b -dependence in both models, were fitted to
 899 obtain the best description of elastic diffractive J/ψ production, in particular its t -dependence,
 900 at small values of t .

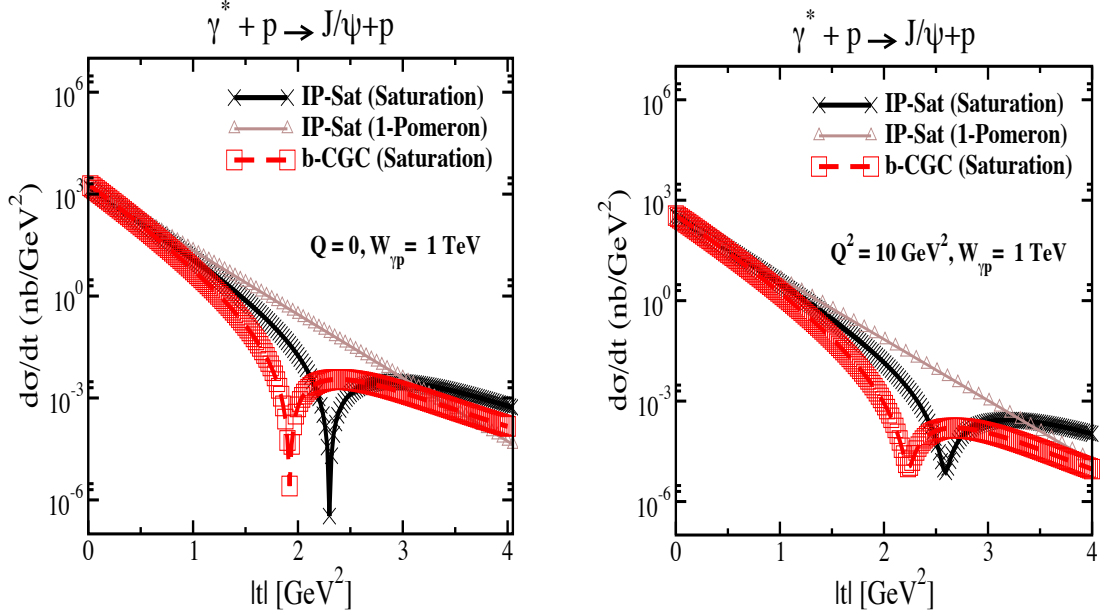


Figure 1.19: Differential cross section for the elastic J/ψ production as a function of $|t|$ within the IP-Sat (saturation), b-CGC and 1-Pomeron models at a fixed $W_{\gamma p} = 1$ TeV, which corresponds to the LHeC kinematics, and for two different values of photon virtuality $Q = 0$ and $Q^2 = 10$ GeV². The thickness of points includes the uncertainties associated with the freedom to choose different values for the charm quark mass within the range $m_c = 1.2 - 1.4$ GeV.

901 In Figs. 1.19 and 1.20 we show the simulated differential cross section $d\sigma/dt$ as a function of $|t|$
 902 and study its variation with energy and virtuality, and its model dependence. First, in Fig. 1.19
 903 we show the differential cross section as a function of t for fixed energy $W = 1$ TeV, in the case of
 904 the photoproduction of J/ψ (left plot) and for the case of DIS with $Q^2 = 10$ GeV² (right plot).
 905 The energy W corresponds to the LHeC kinematics. There are three different calculations in each
 906 plot, using the IP-sat model, the b-CGC model and the 1-Pomeron approximation. The last one
 907 is obtained by keeping just the first non-trivial term in the expansion of the eikonalised formula
 908 of the IP-Sat amplitude (1.6). First, let us observe that all three models coincide for very low
 909 values of t , where the dependence on t is exponential. This is because for low $|t|$, relatively large
 910 values of impact parameter are probed in Eq. (1.4) where the amplitude is small, and therefore
 911 the tail in impact parameter is Gaussian in all three cases. Since the Fourier transform of the
 912 Gaussian in b is an exponential in t , the result at low t follows. On the other hand, the three
 913 scenarios differ significantly for large values of $|t|$. In the case of the 1-Pomeron approximation
 914 the dependence is still exponential, without any dips, which is easily understood since the impact
 915 parameter profile is perfectly Gaussian in this case. For the two other scenarios, dips in $d\sigma/dt$

916 as a function in t emerge. They signal the departure from the Gaussian profile in b for small
 917 values of b where the system is dense. A similar pattern can be observed when performing the
 918 Fourier transform of the Wood-Saxon distribution, which is the typical distribution used for
 919 the description of the matter density in nuclei. When Q^2 is increased the pattern of dips also
 920 changes. This is illustrated in Fig. 1.19. It is seen that the dips move to higher values of $|t|$ for
 921 DIS than for photoproduction. This can be understood from the dipole formula Eq. (1.4) which
 922 contains the integral over the dipole size. Larger values of Q^2 select smaller values of dipole
 923 size r , where the amplitude is smaller and thus in the dilute regime, where the profile in b is
 924 again Gaussian. On the other hand, small scales select large dipole sizes for which the dipole
 925 amplitude is larger and thus the saturation effects more prominent, leading to the distortion
 926 of the impact parameter profile and therefore to the emergence of dips in the differential cross
 927 section $d\sigma/dt$ when studied as a function of t .

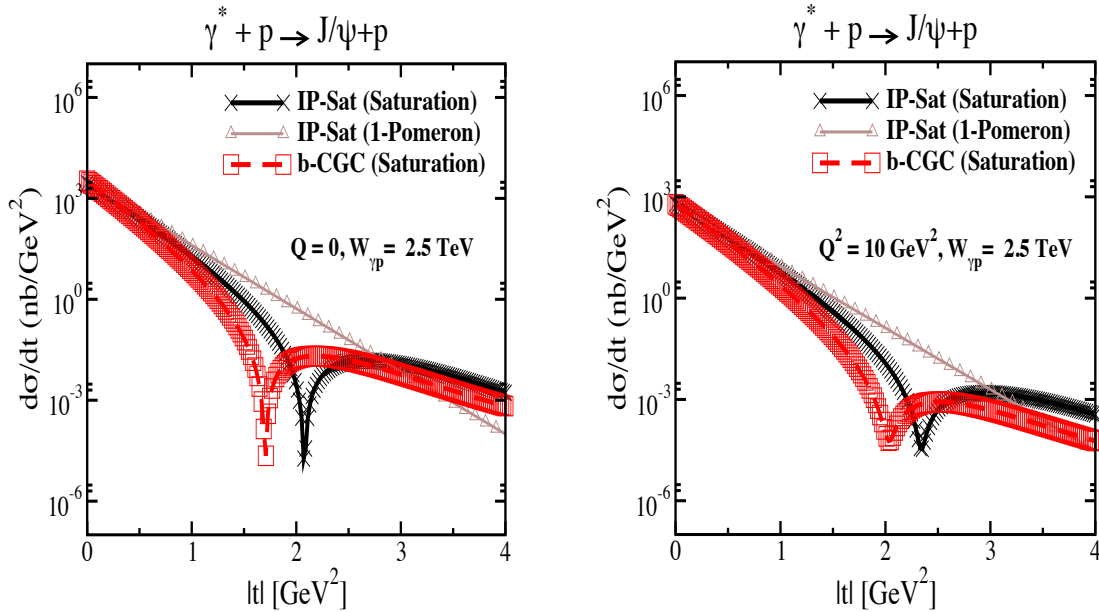


Figure 1.20: Differential cross section for elastic J/ψ production as a function of $|t|$ within the IP-Sat (saturation), b-CGC and 1-Pomeron models at a fixed $W\gamma p = 2.5$ TeV, which corresponds to the region that can be explored by FCC-eh, and for two different values of photon virtuality $Q = 0$ (left plot) and $Q^2 = 10$ GeV² (right plot). The thickness of points includes the uncertainties associated with the freedom to choose different values for the charm quark mass within the range $m_c = 1.2 - 1.4$ GeV .

928 In the next Fig. 1.20 we show the same calculation but for higher energy $W = 2.5$ TeV, which
 929 could be explored in the FCC-eh. In this case we see that the dips move to lower values of
 930 $|t|$. This can be easily understood, as with increasing energy the dipole scattering amplitude
 931 increases, and thus the dilute-dense boundary shifts to larger values of b , meaning that the
 932 deviation from the exponential fall off occurs for smaller values of $|t|$. Similar studies [74] show
 933 also the change of the position of the dips with the mass of the vector meson: for lighter vector
 934 mesons like ρ, ω, ϕ the dips occur at smaller t than for the heavier vector mesons J/ψ or Υ . We
 935 note that, of course, the positions of the dips depend crucially on the details of the models, which
 936 are currently not constrained by the existing HERA data. We also note the sizeable uncertainties
 937 due to the charm quark mass (the fits to inclusive HERA data from which parameters of the
 938 models have been extracted are performed at each fixed value of the charm mass that is then
 939 used to compute exclusive J/ψ production).

940 We thus see that the precise measurement of the t -slope in the elastic production of vector mesons

941 at the LHeC, and its variation with x and scales, provide a unique opportunity to explore the
942 transition between the dilute and dense partonic regimes. As mentioned earlier, elastic diffractive
943 production is one among several different measurements which can be performed to explore the
944 3D structure of the hadron. Another one is Deeply Virtual Compton Scattering which is a
945 process sensitive to the spatial distribution of quarks inside the hadron. Previous preliminary
946 analyses [1] indicate a huge potential of LHeC for the measurement of DVCS. Another example
947 of a process that could be studied at the LHeC, is diffractive exclusive dijet production. It
948 has been suggested [79] that this process is sensitive to the Wigner function, and that the
949 transverse momentum and spatial distribution of partons can be extracted by measuring this
950 process. The transverse momentum of jets would be sensitive to the transverse momentum of
951 the participating partons, whereas the momentum transfer of the elastically scattered proton
952 would give a handle on the impact parameter distribution of the partons in the target [80–82],
953 thus giving a possibility to extract information about the Wigner distribution.

954 So far we have referred to coherent diffraction, i.e. to a scenario in which the proton remains
955 intact after the collision. There also exists incoherent diffraction, where the proton gets excited
956 into some state with the quantum numbers of the proton and separated from the rest of the
957 event by a large rapidity gap. In order to apply the dipole formalism to the incoherent case, see
958 Sec. ?? where the formulae applicable for both protons and nuclei are shown. Here one must
959 consider a more involved structure of the proton (e.g. as composed by a fixed [83–86] or a growing
960 number with $1/x$ of hot spots [87–89]). As discussed in Sec. ??, coherent diffraction is sensitive
961 to the gluon distribution in transverse space, while incoherent diffraction is particularly sensitive
962 to fluctuations of the gluon distribution. A prediction of the model with a growing number of
963 hot spots, both in models where this increasing number is implemented by hand [87–89] and in
964 those where it is dynamically generated [86] from a fixed number at larger x , is that the ratio
965 of incoherent to coherent diffraction will decrease with W , and that this decrease is sensitive to
966 the details of the distribution of hot spots. Thus, to the fluctuations of the gluon distribution
967 in transverse space. In order to check these ideas, both the experimental capability to separate
968 coherent from incoherent diffraction and a large lever arm in W , as available at the LHeC, are
969 required.

Chapter 2

Exploration of Quantum Chromodynamics

The straightforward and strikingly simple formalism of Quantum Chromodynamics (QCD) provides a very successful description of strong interactions. Despite its undoubted success, the strong force remains one of the least known fundamental sectors of (particle) physics and many of its phenomena are known only with moderate or even poor precision, and several aspects still need to be explored, see the introductory Chapter ??.

For an improved understanding of strong interactions and to answer a variety of those open questions additional measurements with highest precision have to be performed. At the LHeC, deep-inelastic electron-proton and lepton-nucleus reactions will extend tests of QCD phenomena to a new and yet unexplored domain up to the TeV scale and to x values as low as 10^{-6} , and QCD measurements can be performed with very high experimental precision. This is because the proton is a *strongly* bound system and in deep-inelastic scattering (DIS) the exchanged *colourless* photon (or Z) between the electron and the parton inside the proton acts as a neutral observer with respect to the phenomena of the strong force. In addition, the over-constrained kinematic system in DIS allows for precise (*in-situ*) calibrations of the detector to measure the kinematics of the scattered lepton, and, more importantly here, also the hadronic final state. In DIS, in many cases, the virtuality of the exchanged γ/Z boson often provides a reasonable scale to stabilise theoretical predictions.

In this Chapter, selected topics of QCD studies at the LHeC are discussed.

2.1 Determination of the strong coupling constant

Quantum Chromodynamics (QCD) [90, 91] has been established as the theory of strong interactions within the Standard Model of particle physics. While there are manifold aspects both from the theoretical and from the experimental point-of-view, by far the most important parameter of QCD is the coupling strength which is most commonly expressed at the mass of the Z boson, M_Z , as $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Its (renormalisation) scale dependence is given by the QCD gauge group $SU(3)$ [92, 93]. Predictions for numerous processes in e^+e^- , pp or ep collisions are then commonly performed in the framework of perturbative QCD, and (the lack of) higher-order QCD corrections often represent limiting aspects for precision physics. Therefore, the determination of the strong coupling constant $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ constitutes one of the most crucial tasks for

1001 future precision physics, while at the same time the study of the scale dependence of α_s provides
 1002 an inevitable test of the validity of QCD as the theory of strong interactions and the portal for
 1003 GUT theories.

1004 Different processes and methodologies can be considered for a determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ (see e.g.
 1005 reviews [94–96]). Since QCD is an asymptotically free theory, with free behaviour at high scales
 1006 but confinement at low scales, a high sensitivity to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is naturally obtained
 1007 from low-scale measurements. However, the high-scale behaviour must then be calculated by
 1008 solving the renormalisation group equation, which implies the strict validity of the theory and
 1009 an excellent understanding of all subleading effects, such as the behaviour around quark-mass
 1010 thresholds.

1011 Precision measurements at the LHeC offer the unique opportunity to exploit many of these
 1012 aspects. Measurements of jet production cross sections or inclusive NC and CC DIS cross
 1013 sections provide a high sensitivity to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, since these measurements can be
 1014 performed at comparably low scales and with high experimental precision. At the same time,
 1015 the LHeC provides the opportunity to test the running of the strong coupling constant over a
 1016 large kinematic range. In this Section, the prospects for a determination of the strong coupling
 1017 constant with inclusive jet cross sections and with inclusive NC/CC DIS cross sections are
 1018 studied.

1019 2.1.1 Strong coupling from inclusive jet cross sections

1020 The measurement of inclusive jet or di-jet production cross sections in NC DIS provides a high
 1021 sensitivity to the strong coupling constant and to the gluon PDF of the proton. This is because
 1022 jet cross sections in NC DIS are measured in the Breit reference frame [97], where the virtual
 1023 boson γ^* or Z collides head-on with the struck parton from the proton and the outgoing jets are
 1024 required to have a non-zero transverse momentum in that reference frame. The leading order
 QCD diagrams are QCD Compton and boson-gluon fusion and are both $\mathcal{O}(\alpha_s)$, see Fig. 2.1.

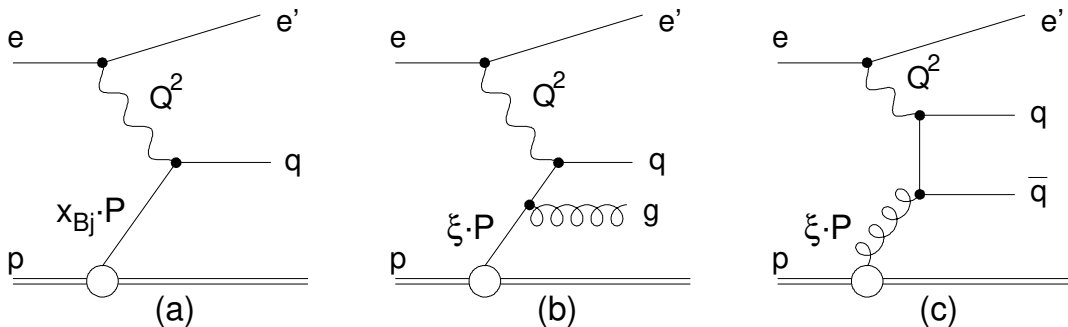


Figure 2.1: Leading order diagrams for inclusive DIS (a) and jet production (b,c) in the Breit frame (taken from Ref. [98]).

1025

1026 At HERA, jets are most commonly defined by the longitudinally invariant k_t jet algorithm [99]
 1027 with a distance parameter $R = 1.0$ [98, 100–116]. This provides an infrared safe jet definition
 1028 and the chosen distance parameter guarantees a small dependence on non-perturbative effects,
 1029 such as hadronisation. Differently than in pp at the LHC [117–120], jet algorithms at the LHeC
 1030 do not require any pile-up subtraction and any reduction of the dependence on minimum bias
 1031 or underlying event, due to the absence of such effects. Therefore, for this study we adopt the
 1032 choices made at HERA.

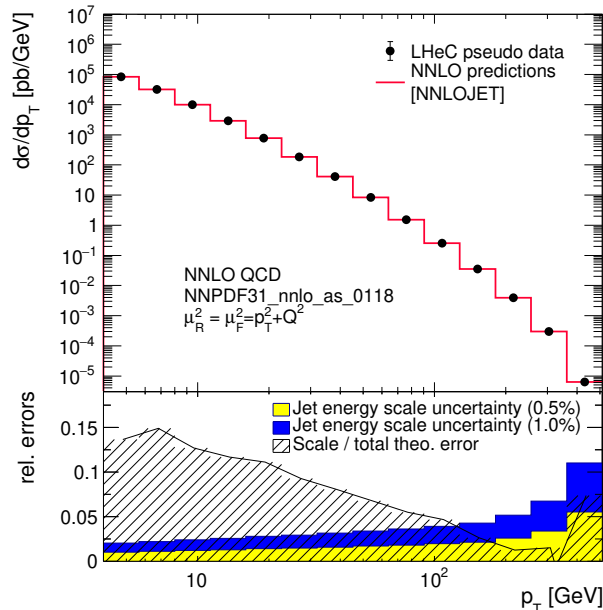


Figure 2.2: Inclusive jet cross sections calculated in NNLO QCD as a function of the jet transverse momentum in the Breit frame, p_T . The shaded area indicates NNLO scale uncertainties and the yellow band shows the estimated experimental jet energy scale uncertainty (JES) of 0.5%. The blue band shows a very conservative assumption on the JES of 1%.

1033 In Fig. 2.2 the next-to-next-to-leading order QCD (NNLO) predictions [121, 122] for cross sec-
 1034 tions for inclusive jet production in NC DIS as a function of the transverse momentum of the jets
 1035 in the Breit frame are displayed. The calculations are performed for an electron beam energy of
 1036 $E_e = 60$ GeV and include γ/Z and Z exchange terms and account for the electron polarisation
 1037 $P_e = -0.8$. The NC DIS kinematic range is set to $Q^2 > 4$ GeV². The calculations are performed
 1038 using the NNLOJET program [123] interfaced to the fastNLO (applfast) library [124–126].

1039 The kinematically accessible range in jet- P_T ranges over two orders of magnitude, $4 < P_T \lesssim$
 1040 400 GeV. The size of the cross section extends over many orders in magnitude, thus imposing
 1041 challenging demands on LHeC experimental conditions, triggers and DAQ bandwidth, calibra-
 1042 tion, and data processing capabilities. The scale uncertainty of the NNLO predictions is about
 1043 10% at low values of P_T and significantly decreases with increasing values of P_T . Future im-
 1044 proved predictions will further reduce these theoretical uncertainties.

1045 For the purpose of estimating the uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ in a determination from inclusive jet
 1046 cross sections at the LHeC, double-differential cross sections as a function of Q^2 and P_T with
 1047 a full set of experimental uncertainties are generated. Altogether 509 cross section values are
 1048 calculated in the kinematic range $8 < Q^2 < 500\,000$ GeV² and $4 < P_T < 512$ GeV, and the bin
 1049 grid is similar to the ones used by CMS, H1 or ZEUS [13, 117, 126, 127]. The various error sources
 1050 considered are summarised in Tab. 2.1. The uncertainties related to the reconstruction of the
 1051 NC DIS kinematic variables, Q^2 , y and x_{bj} , are similar to the estimates for the inclusive NC DIS
 1052 cross sections (see section 1.2). For the reconstruction of hadronic final state particles which are
 1053 the input to the jet algorithm, jet energy scale uncertainty (JES), calorimetric noise and the polar
 1054 angle uncertainty are considered. The size of the uncertainties is gauged with achieved values by
 1055 H1, ZEUS, ATLAS and CMS [107, 115, 128–130]. The size of the dominant JES one is assumed
 1056 to be 0.5% for reconstructed particles in the laboratory rest frame, yielding an uncertainty of
 1057 0.2–4.4% on the cross section after the boost to the Breit frame. A JES uncertainty of 0.5%

1058 is well justified by improved calorimeters, since already H1 and ZEUS reported uncertainties
1059 of 1% [107, 115, 128], and ATLAS and CMS achieved 1% over a wide range in P_T [129, 130],
1060 albeit the presence of pile-up and the considerably more complicated definition of a reference
1061 object for the in-situ calibration. The size of the JES uncertainty is also displayed in Fig. 2.2.
1062 The calorimetric noise of ± 20 MeV on every calorimeter cluster, as reported by H1, yields an
1063 uncertainty of up to 0.7% on the jet cross sections. A minimum size of the statistical uncertainty
1064 of 0.15% is imposed for each cross section bin. An overall normalisation uncertainty of 1.0%
1065 is assumed, which will be mainly dominated by the luminosity uncertainty. In addition, an
1066 uncorrelated uncertainty component of 0.6% collects various smaller error sources, such as for
1067 instance radiative corrections, unfolding or model uncertainties. Studies on the size and the
correlation model of these uncertainties are performed below.

| Exp. uncertainty | Shift | Size on σ [%] |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Statistics with 1 ab^{-1} | min. 0.15 % | 0.15–5 |
| Electron energy | 0.1 % | 0.02–0.62 |
| Polar angle | 2 mrad | 0.02–0.48 |
| Calorimeter noise | ± 20 MeV | 0.01–0.74 |
| Jet energy scale (JES) | 0.5 % | 0.2–4.4 |
| Uncorrelated uncert. | 0.6 % | 0.6 |
| Normalisation uncert. | 1.0 % | 1.0 |

Table 2.1: Anticipated uncertainties of inclusive jet cross section measurements at the LHeC.

1068

1069 The value and uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is obtained in a χ^2 -fit of NNLO predictions [121, 122] to
1070 the simulated data with $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ being a free fit parameter. The methodology follows closely
1071 analyses of HERA jet data [126, 127] and the χ^2 quantity is calculated from relative uncertainties,
1072 i.e. those of the right column of Tab. 2.1. The predictions for the cross section σ account for
1073 both α_s -dependent terms in the NNLO calculations, i.e. in the DGLAP operator and the hard
1074 matrix elements, by using

$$\sigma = f_{\mu_0} \otimes P_{\mu_0 \rightarrow \mu_F}(\alpha_s(M_Z)) \otimes \hat{\sigma}(\alpha_s(M_Z), \mu), \quad (2.1)$$

1075 where f_{μ_0} are the PDFs at a scale of $\mu_0 = 30$ GeV, and $P_{\mu_0 \rightarrow \mu_F}$ denotes the DGLAP operator,
1076 which is dependent on the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. The α_s uncertainty is obtained by linear error
1077 propagation and is validated with a separate study of the $\Delta\chi^2 = 1$ criterion.

1078 In the fit of NNLO QCD predictions to the simulated double-differential LHeC inclusive jet cross
1079 sections an uncertainty of

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{jets}) = \pm 0.00013_{(\text{exp})} \pm 0.00010_{(\text{PDF})} \quad (2.2)$$

1080 is found. The PDF uncertainty is estimated from a PDF set obtained from LHeC inclusive DIS
1081 data (see Sec. 1.3). These uncertainties promise a determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ with the highest
1082 precision and would represent a considerable reduction of the current world average value with
1083 a present uncertainty of ± 0.00110 [95].

1084 The uncertainty of α_s is studied for different values of the experimental uncertainties for the
1085 inclusive jet cross section measurement and for different assumption on bin-to-bin correlations,
1086 expressed by the correlation coefficient ρ , of individual uncertainty sources, as shown in Fig. 2.3.
1087 It is observed that, even for quite conservative scenarios, $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ will be determined with an
1088 uncertainty smaller than 2‰. For this, it is important to keep the size of the uncorrelated
1089 uncertainty or the uncorrelated components of other systematic uncertainties under good control.

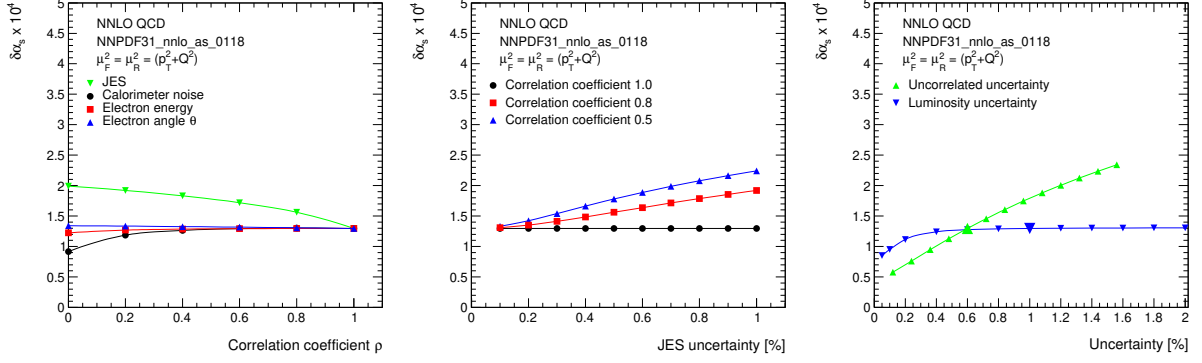


Figure 2.3: Studies of the size and correlations of experimental uncertainties impacting the uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Left: Study of the value of the correlation coefficient ρ for different systematic uncertainties. Common systematic uncertainties are considered as fully correlated, $\rho = 1$. Middle: Size of the JES uncertainty for three different values of ρ_{JES} . Right: Impact of the uncorrelated and normalisation uncertainties on $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)$.

1090 In the present formalism theoretical uncertainties from scale variations of the NNLO predictions
1091 amount to about $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) = 0.0035$ (NNLO). These can be reduced with suitable cuts in P_T
1092 or Q^2 to about $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) \approx 0.0010$. However, it is expected that improved predictions, e.g. with
1093 resummed contributions or $N^3\text{LO}$ predictions will significantly reduce these uncertainties in the
1094 future. Uncertainties on non-perturbative hadronisation effects will have to be considered as
1095 well, but these will be under good control due to the measurements of charged particle spectra
1096 at the LHeC and improved phenomenological models.

1097 2.1.2 Pinning Down α_s with Inclusive and Jet LHeC Data

1098 The dependence of the coupling strength as a function of the renormalisation scale μ_R is predicted
1099 by QCD, which is often called the *running* of the strong coupling. Its study with experimental
1100 data represents an important consistency and validity test of QCD. Using inclusive jet cross
1101 sections the running of the strong coupling can be tested by determining the value of α_s at
1102 different values of μ_R by grouping data points with similar values of μ_R and determining the
1103 value of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ from these subsets of data points. The assumptions on the running of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$
1104 are then imposed only for the limited range of the chosen interval, and not to the full measured
1105 interval as in the previous study. Here we set $\mu_R^2 = Q^2 + P_T^2$ ¹. The experimental uncertainties
1106 from the fits to subsets of the inclusive jet pseudodata are displayed in Fig. 2.4. These results
1107 demonstrate a high sensitivity to α_s over two orders of magnitude in renormalisation scale up
1108 to values of about $\mu_R \approx 500$ GeV. In the range $6 < \mu_R \lesssim 200$ GeV the experimental uncertainty
1109 is found to be smaller than the expectation from the world average value [138]. This region is of
1110 particular interest since it connects the precision determinations from lattice calculations [139]

¹ The choice of the scales follows a *conventional* scale setting procedure and uncertainties for the scale choice and for unknown higher order terms are estimated by varying the scales. Such variations are sensitive only to the terms which govern the behaviour of the running coupling, and may become unreliable due to renormalons [131]. An alternative way to fix the scales is provided by the Principle of Maximum Conformality (PMC) [132–136]. The PMC method was recently applied to predictions of event shape observables in $e^+e^- \rightarrow \text{hadrons}$ [137]. When applying the PMC method to observables in DIS, the alternative scale setting provides a profound alternative to verify the running of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$. Such a procedure could be particularly relevant for DIS event shape observables, where the leading-order terms are insensitive to α_s and conventional scale choices may not be adequately related to the α_s -sensitive higher order QCD corrections.

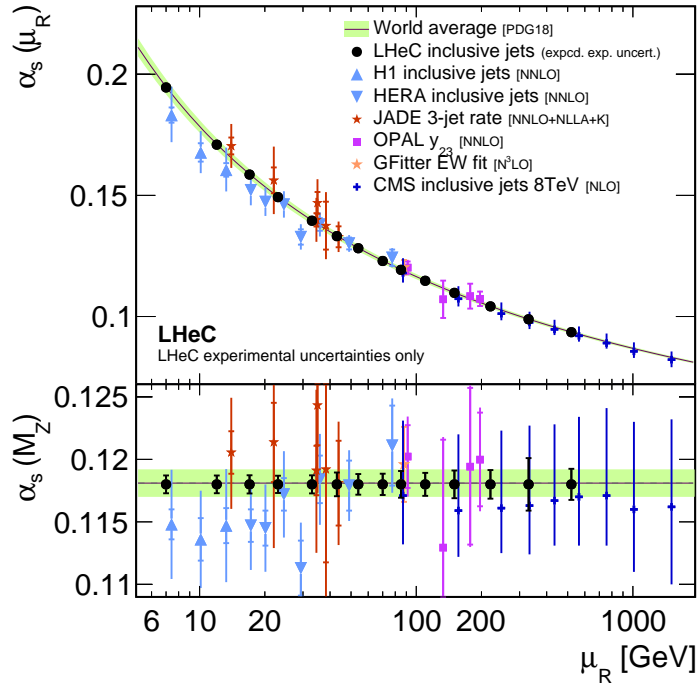


Figure 2.4: Uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and corresponding $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ in a determination of α_s using LHeC inclusive jet cross sections at different values of $\mu_R^2 = Q^2 + p_T^2$. Only experimental uncertainties are shown for LHeC and are compared with a number of presently available measurements and the world average value.

1111 or τ decay measurements [140], which are at low scales $\mathcal{O}(\text{GeV})$, to the measurements at the
 1112 Z pole [141] and to the applications to scales which are relevant for the LHC, e.g. for Higgs
 1113 or top-quark physics or high-mass searches. This kinematic region of scales $\mathcal{O}(10 \text{ GeV})$ cannot
 1114 be accessed by (HL-)LHC experiments because of limitations due to pile-up and underlying
 1115 event [142].

1116 Inclusive DIS cross sections are sensitive to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ through higher-order QCD corrections,
 1117 contributions from the F_L structure function and the scale dependence of the cross section at
 1118 high x (*scaling violations*). The value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ can then be determined in a combined fit
 1119 of the PDFs and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ [127]. While a simultaneous determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and PDFs is
 1120 not possible with HERA inclusive DIS data alone due to its limited precision and kinematic
 1121 coverage [13, 127], the large kinematic coverage, high precision and the integrated luminosity of
 1122 the LHeC data will allow for the first time such an α_s analysis.

1123 For the purpose of the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from inclusive NC/CC DIS data, a combined
 1124 PDF+ α_s fit to the simulated data is performed, similar to the studies in Sec. ???. Other technical
 1125 details are outlined in Ref. [127]. In this fit, however, the numbers of free parameters of the
 1126 gluon parameterisation is increased, since the gluon PDF and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ are highly correlated and
 1127 LHeC data are sensitive to values down to $x < 10^{-5}$, which requires additional freedom for the
 1128 gluon parameterisation. The inclusive data are restricted to $Q^2 > 3.5 \text{ GeV}^2$ in order to avoid a
 1129 region where effects beyond fixed-order perturbation theory may become sizeable [13, 143].

1130 Exploiting the full LHeC inclusive NC/CC DIS data with $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$, the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ can
 1131 be determined with an uncertainty $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) = \pm 0.00038$. With a more optimistic assumption

1132 on the dominant uncorrelated uncertainty of $\delta\sigma_{(\text{uncor.})} = 0.25\%$, an uncertainty as small as

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{incl. DIS}) = \pm 0.00022_{(\text{exp+PDF})} \quad (2.3)$$

1133 is achieved. This would represent a considerable improvement over the present world average
 1134 value. Given these small uncertainties, theoretical uncertainties from missing higher orders or
 heavy quark effects have to be considered in addition. In a dedicated study, the fit is repeated

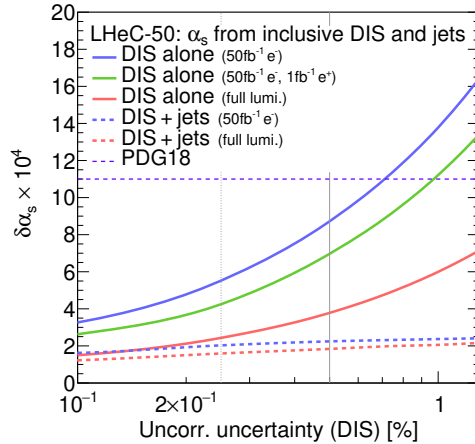


Figure 2.5: Uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from simultaneous fits of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and PDFs to inclusive NC/CC DIS data as a function of the size of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the NC/CC DIS data. The full lines indicate the uncertainties obtained with different assumptions on the data taking scenario and integrated luminosity. The dashed lines indicate results where, additionally to the inclusive NC/CC DIS data, inclusive jet cross section data are considered.

1135
 1136 with a reduced data set which can be accumulated already during a single year of operation ²,
 1137 corresponding to about $\mathcal{L} \sim 50 \text{ fb}^{-1}$. Already these data will be able to improve the world
 1138 average value. These studies are displayed in Fig. 2.5.

1139 The highest sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and an optimal treatment of the PDFs is obtained by using
 1140 inclusive jet data together with inclusive NC/CC DIS data in a combined determination of
 1141 $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and the PDFs. Jet data will provide an enhanced sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, while inclusive
 1142 DIS data has the highest sensitivity to the determination of the PDFs. Furthermore, a consistent
 1143 theoretical QCD framework can be employed.

1144 For this study, the double-differential inclusive jet data as described above, and additionally
 1145 the inclusive NC/CC DIS data with $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$ as introduced in Sec. 1.2, are employed.
 1146 Besides the normalisation uncertainty, all sources of systematic uncertainties are considered as
 1147 uncorrelated between the two processes. A fit of NNLO QCD predictions to these data sets is
 1148 then performed, and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and the parameters of the PDFs are determined. The methodology
 1149 follows closely the methodology sketched in the previous study. Using inclusive jet and inclusive
 1150 DIS data in a single analysis, the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is determined with an uncertainty of

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{incl. DIS \& jets}) = \pm 0.00018_{(\text{exp+PDF})}. \quad (2.4)$$

1151 This result will improve the world average value considerably. However, theoretical uncertainties
 1152 are not included and new mathematical tools and an improved understanding of QCD will

²Two different assumptions are made. One fit is performed with only electron data corresponding to $\mathcal{L} \sim 50 \text{ fb}^{-1}$, and an alternative scenario considers further positron data corresponding to $\mathcal{L} \sim 1 \text{ fb}^{-1}$.

1153 be needed in order to achieve small values similar to the experimental ones. The dominant
 1154 sensitivity in this study arises from the jet data. This can be seen from Fig. 2.5, where $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)$
 1155 changes only moderately with different assumptions imposed on the inclusive NC/CC DIS data.
 1156 Assumptions made for the uncertainties of the inclusive jet data have been studied above, and
 1157 these results can be translated easily to this PDF+ α_s fit.

1158 The expected values for $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ obtained from inclusive jets or from inclusive NC/CC DIS data
 1159 are compared in Fig. 2.6 with present determinations from global fits based on DIS data (called
PDF fits) and the world average value [95]. It is observed that LHeC will have the potential

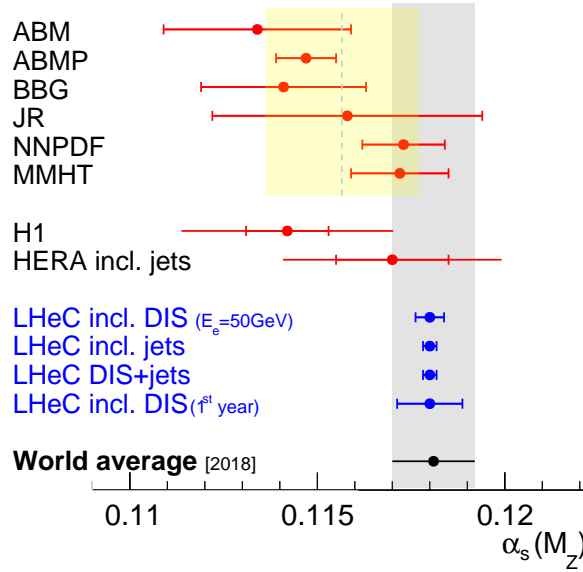


Figure 2.6: Summary of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ values in comparison with present values.

1160 to improve considerably the world average value. Already after one year of data taking, the
 1161 experimental uncertainties of the NC/CC DIS data are competitive with the world average
 1162 value. The measurement of jet cross sections will further improve that value (not shown).
 1163

1164 Furthermore, LHeC will be able to address a long standing puzzle. All α_s determinations from
 1165 global fits based on NC/CC DIS data find a lower value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ than determinations in the
 1166 lattice QCD framework, from τ decays or in a global electroweak fit. With the expected precision
 1167 from LHeC this discrepancy will be resolved.

1168 2.1.3 Strong coupling from other processes

1169 A detailed study for the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from NC/CC DIS and from inclusive jet data
 1170 was presented in the previous paragraphs. However, a large number of additional processes
 1171 and observables that are measured at the LHeC can also be considered for a determination of
 1172 $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Suitable observables or processes are di-jet and multi-jet production, heavy flavour
 1173 production, jets in photoproduction or event shape observables. These processes all exploit
 1174 the α_s dependence of the hard interaction. Using suitable predictions, also *softer* processes
 1175 can be exploited for an α_s determination. Examples could be jet shapes or other substructure
 1176 observables, or charged particle multiplicities.

1177 Since $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is a parameter of a phenomenological model, the total uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is
 1178 always a sum of experimental and theoretical uncertainties which are related to the definition of
 1179 the observable and to the applied model, e.g. hadronisation uncertainties, diagram removal/sub-
 1180 traction uncertainties or uncertainties from missing higher orders. Therefore, credible prospects
 1181 for the total uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from other observables or processes are altogether difficult
 1182 to predict, even more since LHeC will explore a new kinematic regime that was previously
 1183 unmeasured.

1184 In a first approximation, for any process the sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ scales with the order n of α_s
 1185 in the leading-order diagram, α_s^n . The higher the power n the higher the sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$.
 1186 Consequently, the experimental uncertainty of an α_s fit may reduce with increasing power n .
 1187 Already at HERA three-jet cross section were proven to have a high sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ albeit
 1188 their sizeable statistical uncertainties [98, 108]. At the LHeC, due to the higher \sqrt{s} and huge
 1189 integrated luminosity, as well as the larger acceptance of the detector, three-, four- or five-jet
 1190 cross sections represent highly sensitive observables for a precise determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, and
 1191 high experimental precision can be achieved. In these cases, fixed order pQCD predictions may
 1192 become limiting factors, since they are more complicated for large n .

1193 Di-jet observables are expected to yield a fairly similar experimental uncertainty than inclusive
 1194 jet cross sections, as studied in the previous paragraphs, since both have $n = 1$ at LO. How-
 1195 ever, their theoretical uncertainties may be smaller, since di-jet observables are less sensitive to
 1196 additional higher-order radiation, in particular at lower scales where $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ is larger.

1197 Event shape observables in DIS exploit additional radiation in DIS events (see e.g. review [144]
 1198 or HERA measurements [145, 146]). Consequently, once measured at the LHeC the experi-
 1199 mental uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from these observables are expected to become very similar
 1200 to that in Eq. (2.4), since both the event sample and the process is similar to the inclusive
 1201 jet cross sections³. However, different reconstruction techniques of the observables may yield
 1202 reduced experimental uncertainties, and the calculation of event shape observables allow for
 1203 the resummation of large logarithms, and steady theoretical advances promise small theoretical
 1204 uncertainties [147–153].

1205 Jet production cross sections in photoproduction represents a unique opportunity for another
 1206 precision determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Such measurements have been performed at HERA [154–
 1207 157]. The sizeable photoproduction cross section provides a huge event sample, which is statis-
 1208 tically independent from NC DIS events, and already the leading-order predictions are sensitive
 1209 to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ [158]. Also its running can be largely measured since the scale of the process is well
 1210 estimated by the transverse momentum of the jets $\mu_R \sim P_T^{\text{jet}}$. Limiting theoretical aspects are
 1211 due to the presence of a quasi-real photon and the poorly known photon PDF [159, 160].

1212 A different class of observables represent heavy flavour (HF) cross sections, which are discussed in
 1213 Sec. 1.3.5. Due to flavour conservation, these are commonly proportional to $\mathcal{O}(\alpha_s^1)$ at leading-
 1214 order. However, when considering inclusive HF cross sections above the heavy quark mass
 1215 threshold heavy quarks can be factorised into the PDFs, and the leading structure functions
 1216 $F_2^{c,b}$ are sensitive to α_s only beyond the LO approximation (see reviews [46, 47], recent HERA
 1217 measurements [31, 161] and references therein). The presence of the heavy quark mass as an
 1218 additional scale stabilises perturbative calculations, and reduced theoretical uncertainties are
 1219 expected.

1220 At the LHeC the structure of jets and the formation of hadrons can be studied with unprece-

³It shall be noted, that event shape observables in NC DIS can be defined in the laboratory rest frame or the Breit frame.

1221 dented precision. This is so because of the presence of a single hadron in the initial state.
 1222 Therefore, limiting effects like the underlying event or pile-up are absent or greatly diminished.
 1223 Precise measurements of jet shape observables, or the study of jet substructure observables [162],
 1224 are highly sensitive to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, because parton shower and hadronisation take place
 1225 at lower scales where the strong coupling becomes large and an increased sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$
 1226 is attained [163,164].

1227 Finally, also the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from inclusive NC DIS cross sections can be improved.
 1228 For NC DIS the dominant sensitivity to α_s arises from the F_L structure function and from scaling
 1229 violations of F_2 at lower values of Q^2 but at very high values of x . Dedicated measurements of
 1230 these kinematic regions will further improve the experimental uncertainties from the estimated
 1231 values in Eq. (2.3).

1232 2.2 Discovery of New Strong Interaction Dynamics at Small x

1233 2.2.1 New Small x Dynamics

1234 The LHeC machine will offer access to a completely novel kinematic regime of DIS characterised
 1235 by very small values of x . From the kinematical plane in (x, Q^2) depicted in Fig. ??, it is clear
 1236 that the LHeC will be able to probe Bjorken- x values as low as 10^{-6} for perturbative values of
 1237 Q^2 . At low values of x various phenomena may occur which go beyond the standard collinear
 1238 perturbative description based on DGLAP evolution. Since the seminal works of Balitsky, Fadin,
 1239 Kuraev and Lipatov [78,165,166] it has been known that, at large values of centre-of-mass energy
 1240 \sqrt{s} or, to be more precise, in the Regge limit, there are large logarithms of energy which need
 1241 to be resummed. Thus, even at low values of the strong coupling α_s , logarithms of energy $\ln s$
 1242 may be sufficiently large, such that terms like $(\alpha_s \ln s)^n$ will start to dominate the cross section.

1243 The calculation of scattering amplitudes in the high-energy limit and the resummation of
 1244 $(\alpha_s \ln s)^n$ series in the leading logarithmic order was performed in [78,165,166] and it resulted in
 1245 the famous BFKL evolution equation. This small x evolution equation, written for the so-called
 1246 gluon Green's function or the unintegrated gluon density, is a differential equation in $\ln 1/x$. An
 1247 important property of this equation is that it keeps the transverse momenta unordered along the
 1248 gluon cascade. This has to be contrasted with DGLAP evolution which is differential in the hard
 1249 scale Q^2 and relies on the strong ordering in the transverse momenta of the exchanged partons in
 1250 the parton cascade. The solution to the BFKL equation is a gluon density which grows sharply
 1251 with decreasing x , as a power i.e. $\sim x^{-\omega_{IP}}$, where ω_{IP} is the hard Pomeron intercept, and in
 1252 the leading logarithmic approximation equals $\frac{N_c \alpha_s}{\pi} 4 \ln 2$, which gives a value of about 0.5 for
 1253 typical values of the strong coupling. The leading logarithmic (LLx) result yielded a growth of
 1254 the gluon density which was too steep for the experimental data at HERA. The next-to-leading
 1255 logarithmic (NLLx) calculation performed in the late 90s [167,168] resulted in large negative
 1256 corrections to the LLx value of the hard Pomeron intercept and yielded some instabilities in the
 1257 cross section [169–173].

1258 The appearance of the large negative corrections at NLLx motivated the search for the appro-
 1259 priate resummation which would stabilize the result. It was understood very early that the
 1260 large corrections which appear in BFKL at NLLx are mostly due to the kinematics [174–176]
 1261 as well as DGLAP terms and the running of the strong coupling. First attempts at combining
 1262 the BFKL and DGLAP dynamics together with the proper kinematics [177] yielded encouraging
 1263 results, and allowed a description of HERA data on structure functions with good accuracy. The

1264 complete resummation program was developed in a series of works [178–191]. In these works
 1265 the resummation for the gluon Green’s function and the splitting functions was developed.

1266 The low- x resummation was recently applied to the description of structure function data at
 1267 HERA using the methodology of NNPDF [192]. It was demonstrated that the resummed fits
 1268 provide a better description of the structure function data than the pure DGLAP based fits at
 1269 fixed NNLO order. In particular, it was shown that the χ^2 of the fits does not vary appreciably
 1270 when more small x data are included in the case of the fits which include the effects of the small- x
 1271 resummation. On the other hand, the fits based on NNLO DGLAP evolution exhibit a worsening
 1272 of their quality in the region of low x and low to moderate values of Q^2 . This indicates that
 1273 there is some tension in the fixed order fits based on DGLAP, and that resummation alleviates
 1274 it. In addition, it was shown that the description of the longitudinal structure function F_L
 1275 from HERA data is improved in the fits with the small x resummation. This analysis suggests
 1276 that the small x resummation effects are indeed visible in the HERA kinematic region. Such
 1277 effects will be strongly magnified at the LHeC, which probes values of x more than one order
 1278 of magnitude lower than HERA. The NNPDF group also performed simulation of the structure
 1279 functions F_2 and F_L with and without resummation in the LHeC range as well as for the next
 1280 generation electron-hadron collider FCC-eh [192]. The predictions for the structure functions as
 1281 a function of x for fixed values of Q^2 are shown in Figs. 2.7.

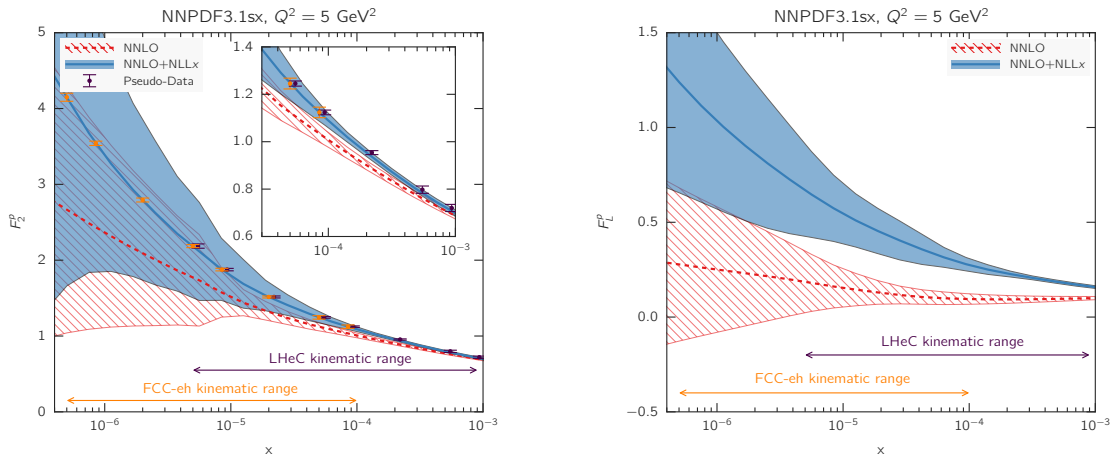


Figure 2.7: Predictions for the F_2 and F_L structure functions using the NNPDF3.1sx NNLO and NNLO+NLLx fits at $Q^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$ for the kinematics of the LHeC and FCC-eh. In the case of F_2 , we also show the expected total experimental uncertainties based on the simulated pseudodata, assuming the NNLO+NLLx values as the central prediction. A small offset has been applied to the LHeC pseudodata as some of the values of x overlap with the FCC-eh pseudodata points. The inset in the left plot shows a magnified view in the kinematic region $x > 3 \times 10^{-5}$, corresponding to the reach of HERA data. Figure taken from Ref. [192].

1282 The simulations were done using APFEL [193] together with the HELL package [194] which
 1283 implements the small x resummation. From Fig. 2.7 it is clear that LHeC will have much higher
 1284 sensitivity to discriminate between fixed order and resummed scenarios than the HERA collider,
 1285 with even better discrimination at the FCC-eh. The differences between the central values for
 1286 the two predictions are of the order of 15% for the case of F_2 and this is much larger than
 1287 the projected error bar on the reduced cross section or structure function F_2 which could be
 1288 measured at LHeC. For comparison, the simulated pseudodata for F_2 are shown together with
 1289 the expected experimental uncertainties. The total uncertainties of the simulated pseudodata
 1290 are at the few percent level at most, and are therefore much smaller than the uncertainties

1291 coming from the PDFs in most of the kinematic range.

1292 It is evident that fits to the LHeC data will have power to discriminate between the different
 1293 frameworks. In the right plot in Fig. 2.7, the predictions for the longitudinal structure function
 1294 are shown. We see that in the case of the F_L structure function, the differences between the
 1295 fixed order and resummed predictions are even larger, consistently over the entire range of x .
 1296 This indicates the importance of the measurement of the longitudinal structure function F_L
 1297 which can provide further vital constraints on the QCD dynamics in the low x region due to its
 1298 sensitivity to the gluon density in the proton.

1299 To further illustrate the power of a high energy DIS collider like the LHeC in exploring the
 1300 dynamics at low x , fits which include the simulated data were performed. The NNLO+NLLx
 1301 resummed calculation was used to obtain the simulated pseudodata, both for the LHeC, in a
 1302 scenario of a 60 GeV electron beam on a 7 TeV proton beam as well as in the case of the FCC-eh
 1303 scenario with a 50 TeV proton beam. All the experimental uncertainties for the pseudodata have
 1304 been added in quadrature. Next, fits were performed to the DIS HERA as well as LHeC and
 1305 FCC-eh pseudodata using the theory with and without the resummation at low x . Hadronic
 1306 data like jet, Drell-Yan or top, were not included for this analysis but, as demonstrated in [192],
 1307 these data do not have much of the constraining power at low x , and therefore the results of
 1308 the analysis at low x are independent of the additional non-DIS data sets. The quality of the
 1309 fits characterised by the χ^2 was markedly worse when the NNLO DGLAP framework was used
 1310 to fit the HERA data and the pseudodata from LHeC and/or FCC-eh than was the case with
 1311 resummation. To be precise, the χ^2 per degree of freedom for the HERA data set was equal to
 1312 1.22 for the NNLO fit, and 1.07 for the resummed fit. For the case of the LHeC/FCC-eh the χ^2
 1313 per degree of freedom was equal to 1.71/2.72 and 1.22/1.34 for NNLO and NNLO+resummation
 1314 fits, respectively. These results demonstrate the huge discriminatory power of the new DIS
 1315 machines between the DGLAP and resummed frameworks, and the large sensitivity to the low
 1316 x region while simultaneously probing low to moderate Q^2 values.

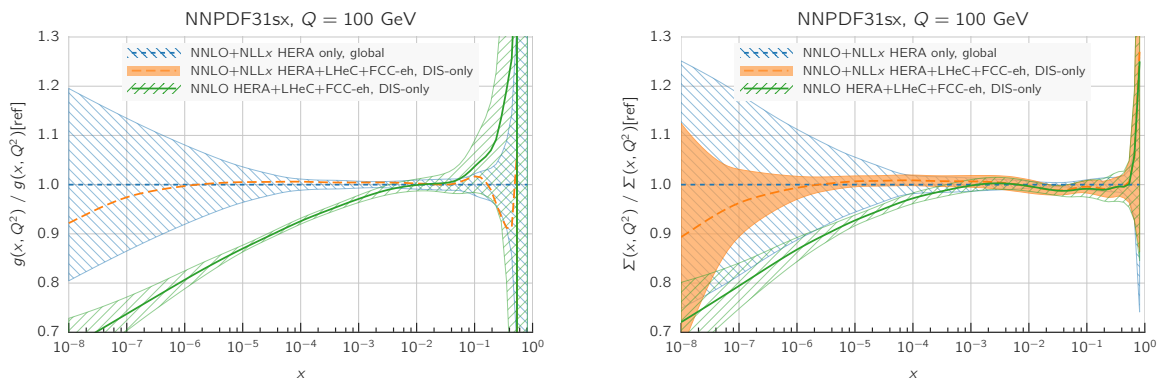


Figure 2.8: Comparison between the gluon (left plot) and the quark singlet (right plot) PDFs in the NNPDF3.1sx NNLO+NLLx fits without (blue hatched band) and with the LHeC+FCC-eh pseudodata (orange band) on inclusive structure functions. For completeness, we also show the results of the corresponding NNPDF3.1sx NNLO fit with LHeC+FCC-eh pseudodata (green hatched band). Figure taken from Ref. [192].

1317 In Fig. 2.8 the comparison of the gluon and quark distributions from the NNLO + NLLx
 1318 fits is shown at $Q = 100$ GeV as a function of x , with and without including the simulated
 1319 pseudodata from LHeC as well as FCC-eh. The large differences at large x are due to the
 1320 fact that only DIS data were included in the fits, and not the hadronic data. The central
 1321 values of the extracted PDFs using only HERA or using HERA and the simulated pseudodata

1322 coincide with each other, but a large reduction in uncertainty is visible when the new data are
1323 included. The uncertainties from the fits based on the HERA data only increase sharply already
1324 at $x \sim 10^{-4}$. On the other hand, including the pseudodata from LHeC and/or FCC-eh can
1325 extend this regime by order(s) of magnitude down in x . Furthermore, fits without resummation,
1326 based only on NNLO DGLAP, were performed to the HERA data and the pseudodata. We see
1327 that in this case the extracted gluon and singlet quark densities differ significantly from the fits
1328 using the NNLO+NLLx. Already at $x = 10^{-4}$ the central values of the gluon differ by 10% and
1329 at $x = 10^{-5}$, which is the LHeC regime, the central values for the gluon differ by 15%. This
1330 difference is much larger than the precision with which the gluon can be extracted from the DIS
1331 data, which is of the order of $\sim 1\%$.

1332 The presented analysis demonstrates that the fixed order prediction based on the DGLAP
1333 evolution would likely fail to describe accurately the structure function data in the new DIS
1334 machines and that in that regime new dynamics including resummation are mandatory for
1335 quantitative predictions. Therefore, the LHeC machine has an unprecedented potential to pin
1336 down the details of the QCD dynamics at low values of Bjorken x .

1337 2.2.2 Disentangling non-linear QCD dynamics at the LHeC

1338 The LHeC will extend the kinematic reach of HERA at small- x by one order of magnitude in
1339 the perturbative regime $Q \gtrsim 1 \text{ GeV}$ [1]. This extension will allow unprecedented tests of the
1340 strong interaction in this extreme region, where deviations from the linear DGLAP evolution are
1341 expected to appear. In particular, it has been argued that the strong growth of the gluon PDF
1342 at small- x should eventually lead to gluon recombination [195] to avoid violating the unitary
1343 bounds. The onset of such non-linear dynamics, also known as saturation, has been extensively
1344 searched but so far there is no conclusive evidence of its presence, at least within the HERA
1345 inclusive structure function measurements. In this context, the extended kinematic range of the
1346 LHeC provides unique avenues to explore the possible onset of non-linear QCD dynamics at
1347 small- x . The discovery of saturation, a radically new regime of QCD, would then represent an
1348 important milestone in our understanding of the strong interactions.

1349 The main challenge in disentangling saturation lies in the fact that non-linear corrections are
1350 expected to be moderate even at the LHeC, since they are small (if present at all) in the region
1351 covered by HERA. Therefore, great care needs to be employed in order to separate such effects
1352 from those of standard DGLAP linear evolution. Indeed, it is well known that HERA data at
1353 small- x in the perturbative region can be equally well described, at least at the qualitative level,
1354 both by PDF fits based on the DGLAP framework as well as by saturation-inspired models.
1355 However, rapid progress both in theory calculations and methodological developments have
1356 pushed QCD fits to a new level of sophistication, and recently it has been shown that subtle but
1357 clear evidence of BFKL resummation at small- x is present in HERA data, both for inclusive and
1358 for heavy quark structure functions [196, 197]. Such studies highlight how it should be possible
1359 to tell apart non-linear from linear dynamics using state-of-the-art fitting methods even if these
1360 are moderate, provided that they are within the LHeC reach.

1361 Here we want to assess the sensitivity of the LHeC to detect the possible onset of non-linear
1362 saturation dynamics. This study will be carried out by generalising a recent analysis [26] that
1363 quantified the impact of LHeC inclusive and semi-inclusive measurements on the PDF4LHC15
1364 PDFs [198, 199] by means of Hessian profiling [200]. There, the LHeC pseudodata was generated
1365 assuming that linear DGLAP evolution was valid in the entire LHeC kinematic range using the
1366 PDF4LHC15 set as input. To ascertain the possibility of pinning down saturation at the LHeC,

1367 here we have revisited this study but now generating the LHeC pseudodata by means of a
 1368 saturation-inspired calculation. By monitoring the statistical significance of the tension that
 1369 will be introduced (by construction) between the saturation pseudodata and the DGLAP theory
 1370 assumed in the PDF fit, we aim to determine the likelihood of disentangling non-linear from
 1371 linear evolution effects at the LHeC. See also [201] for previous related studies along the same
 1372 direction.

1373 Analysis settings

1374 In this study we adopt the settings of [26, 202], to which we refer the interested reader for
 1375 further details. In Ref. [26] the impact on the proton PDFs of inclusive and semi-inclusive
 1376 neutral-current (NC) and charged current (CC) DIS structure functions from the LHeC was
 1377 quantified. These results were then compared with the corresponding projections for the PDF
 1378 sensitivity of the High-Luminosity upgrade of the LHC (HL-LHC). In the left panel of Fig. 2.9
 1379 we display the kinematic range in the (x, Q^2) plane of the LHeC pseudodata employed in that
 1380 analysis, which illustrated how the LHeC can provide unique constraints on the behaviour of
 1381 the quark and gluon PDFs in the very small- x region.

1382 Since non-linear dynamics are known to become sizeable only at small- x , for the present analysis
 1383 it is sufficient to consider the NC e^-p inclusive scattering cross sections from proton beam en-
 1384 ergies of $E_p = 7$ TeV and $E_p = 1$ TeV. In the right panel in Fig. 2.9 we show the bins in (x, Q^2)
 1385 for which LHeC pseudodata for inclusive structure functions has been generated according to
 1386 a saturation-based calculation. Specifically, we have adopted here the DGLAP-improved satu-
 1387 ration model of Ref. [203], in which the scattering matrix is modelled through eikonal iteration
 1388 of two gluon exchanges. This model was further extended to include heavy flavour in [204].
 1389 The specific parameters that we use were taken from Fit 2 in [205], where parameterisations
 1390 are provided that can be used for $x < 0.01$ and $Q^2 < 700$ GeV². These parameters were ex-
 1391 tracted from a fit to the HERA legacy inclusive structure function measurements [13] restricted
 1392 to $x < 0.01$ and $0.045 < Q^2 < 650$ GeV². In contrast to other saturation models, the one we
 1393 assume here [205] provides a reasonable description for large Q^2 in the small x region, where it
 1394 ensure a smooth transition to standard fixed-order perturbative results.

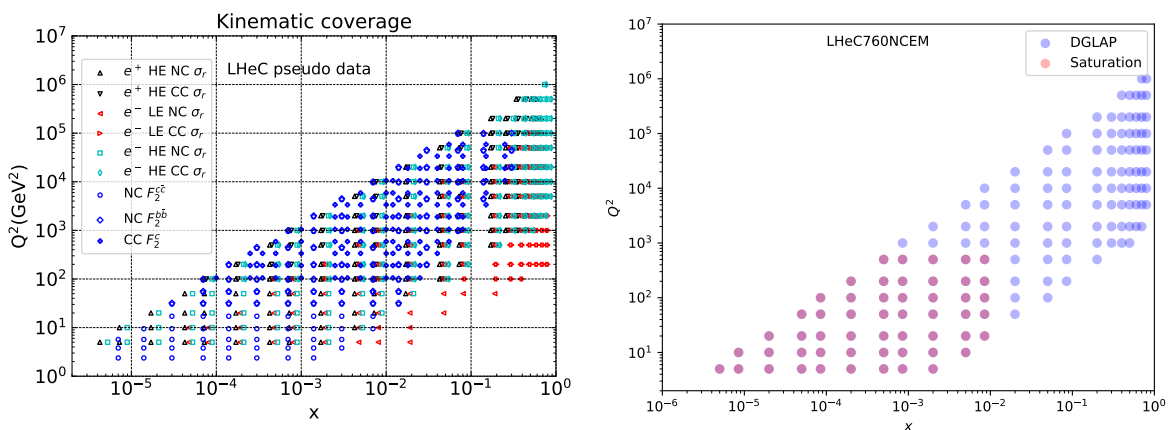


Figure 2.9: Left: the kinematic range in the (x, Q^2) plane of the LHeC pseudodata on inclusive and semi-inclusive DIS structure functions used in the PDF projections of [26]. Right: the kinematic coverage of the NC e^-p scattering pseudodata at the LHeC, where the blue (red) points indicate those bins for which DGLAP (saturation) predictions are available.

1395 Note that the above discussion refers only to the generated LHeC pseudodata: all other aspects of
1396 the QCD analysis of [26] are left unchanged. In particular, the PDF profiling will be carried out
1397 using theory calculations obtained by means of DGLAP evolution with the NNLO PDF4LHC15
1398 set (see also [206]), with heavy quark structure functions evaluated by means of the FONLL-
1399 B general-mass variable flavour number scheme [55]. In order to ensure consistency with the
1400 PDF4LHC15 prior, here we will replace the DGLAP pseudodata by the saturation calculation
1401 only in the kinematic region for $x \lesssim 10^{-4}$, rather than for all the bins indicated in red in
1402 Fig. 2.9. The reason for this choice is that PDF4LHC15 already includes HERA data down to
1403 $x \simeq 10^{-4}$ which is successfully described via the DGLAP framework, and therefore if we assume
1404 departures from DGLAP in the LHeC pseudodata this should only be done for smaller values
1405 of x .

1406 Results and discussion

1407 Using the analysis settings described above, we have carried out the profiling of PDF4LHC15
1408 with the LHeC inclusive structure function pseudodata, which for $x \leq 10^{-4}$ ($x > 10^{-4}$) has
1409 been generated using the GBW saturation (DGLAP) calculations, and compare them with the
1410 results of the profiling where the pseudodata follows the DGLAP prediction. We have generated
1411 $N_{\text{exp}} = 500$ independent sets LHeC pseudodata, each one characterised by different random
1412 fluctuations (determined by the experimental uncertainties) around the underlying central value.

1413 To begin with, it is instructive to compare the data versus theory agreement, χ^2/n_{dat} , between
1414 the pre-fit and post-fit calculations, in order to assess the differences between the DGLAP and
1415 saturation cases. In the upper plots of Fig. 2.10 we show the distributions of pre-fit and post-fit
1416 values of χ^2/n_{dat} for the $N_{\text{exp}} = 500$ sets of generated LHeC pseudodata. We compare the results
1417 of the profiling of the LHeC pseudodata based on DGLAP calculations in the entire range of
1418 x with those where the pseudodata is based on the saturation model in the region $x < 10^{-4}$.
1419 Then in the bottom plot we compare of the post-fit χ^2 distributions between the two scenarios.
1420 Note that in these three plots the ranges in the x axes are different.

1421 From this comparison we can observe that for the case where the pseudodata is generated using
1422 a consistent DGLAP framework (PDF4LHC15) as the one adopted for the theory calculations
1423 used in the fit, as expected the agreement is already good at the pre-fit level, and it is further
1424 improved at the post-fit level. However the situation is rather different in the case where a
1425 subset of the LHeC pseudodata is generated using a saturation model: at the pre-fit level the
1426 agreement between theory and pseudodata is poor, with $\chi^2/n_{\text{dat}} \simeq 7$. The situation markedly
1427 improves at the post-fit level, where now the χ^2/n_{dat} distributions peaks around 1.3. This result
1428 implies that the DGLAP fit manages to absorb most of the differences in theory present in
1429 the saturation pseudodata. This said, the DGLAP fit cannot entirely *fit away* the non-linear
1430 corrections: as shown in the lower plot of Fig. 2.10, even at the post-fit level one can still tell
1431 apart the χ^2/n_{dat} distributions between the two cases, with the DGLAP (saturation) pseudodata
1432 peaking at around 0.9 (1.3). This comparison highlights that it is not possible for the DGLAP
1433 fit to completely absorb the saturation effects into a PDF redefinition.

1434 In order to identify the origin of the worse agreement between theory predictions and LHeC
1435 pseudodata in the saturation case, it is illustrative to take a closer look at the pulls defined as

$$P(x, Q^2) = \frac{\mathcal{F}_{\text{fit}}(x, Q^2) - \mathcal{F}_{\text{dat}}(x, Q^2)}{\delta_{\text{exp}} \mathcal{F}(x, Q^2)}, \quad (2.5)$$

1436 where \mathcal{F}_{fit} is the central value of the profiled results for the observable \mathcal{F} (in this case the reduced
1437 neutral current DIS cross section), \mathcal{F}_{dat} is the corresponding central value of the pseudodata,

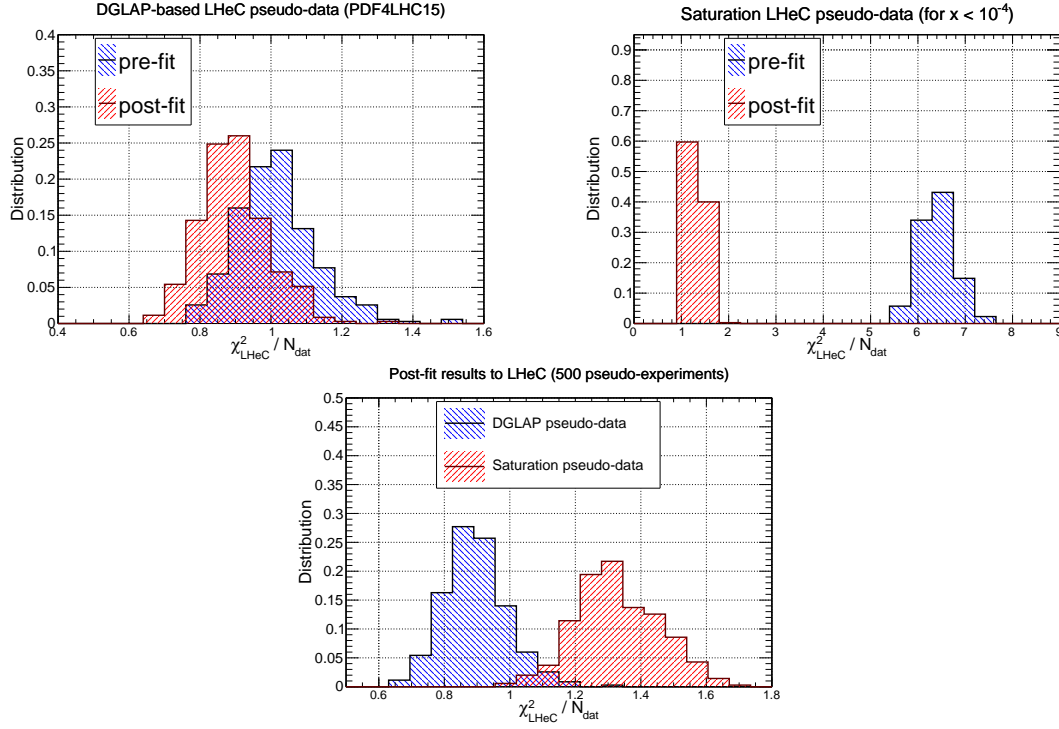


Figure 2.10: Upper plots: the distribution of pre-fit and post-fit values of χ^2/n_{dat} for the $N_{\text{exp}} = 500$ sets of generated LHeC pseudodata. We compare the results of the profiling of the LHeC pseudodata based on DGLAP calculations in the entire range of x (left) with those where the pseudodata is based on the saturation model in the region $x < 10^{-4}$ (right plot). Bottom plot: comparison of the post-fit χ^2/n_{dat} distributions between these two scenarios for the pseudodata generation.

1438 and $\delta_{\text{exp}}\mathcal{F}$ represents the associated total experimental uncertainty. In Fig. 2.11 we display the
 1439 pulls between the post-fit prediction and the central value of the LHeC pseudodata for different
 1440 bins in Q^2 . We compare the cases where the pseudodata has been generated using a consistent
 1441 theory calculation (DGLAP) with that based on the GBW saturation model.

1442 The comparisons in Fig. 2.11 show first of all that in the DGLAP case the pulls are $\mathcal{O}(1)$ in
 1443 the entire kinematical range. This is of course expected, given that the LHeC pseudodata is
 1444 generated using the same theory as the one subsequently used for the fit. In the case where
 1445 the pseudodata has been partially generated with the saturation calculation, on the other hand,
 1446 one finds a systematic tension between the theory used for the fit (DGLAP) and the one used
 1447 to generate the pseudodata (saturation). Indeed, we find that at the smallest values of x the
 1448 theory prediction undershoots the data by a significant amount, while at higher x the opposite
 1449 behaviour takes place. One can also see that in the region $10^{-4} \lesssim x \lesssim 10^{-3}$ the fit overshoots
 1450 the pseudodata by a large amount.

1451 These comparisons highlight how a QCD fit to the saturation pseudodata is obtained as a
 1452 compromise between opposite trends: the theory wants to overshoot the data at very small x
 1453 and overshoot it at larger values of x . These tensions result in a distorted fit, explaining the
 1454 larger χ^2/n_{dat} values as compared to the DGLAP case. Such a behaviour can be partially traced
 1455 back by the different scaling in Q^2 between DGLAP and GBW: while a different x dependence
 1456 could eventually be absorbed into a change of the PDFs at the parameterisation scale Q_0 , this
 1457 is not possible with a Q^2 dependence.

1458 The pull analysis of Fig. 2.11 highlights how in order to tell apart linear from non-linear QCD

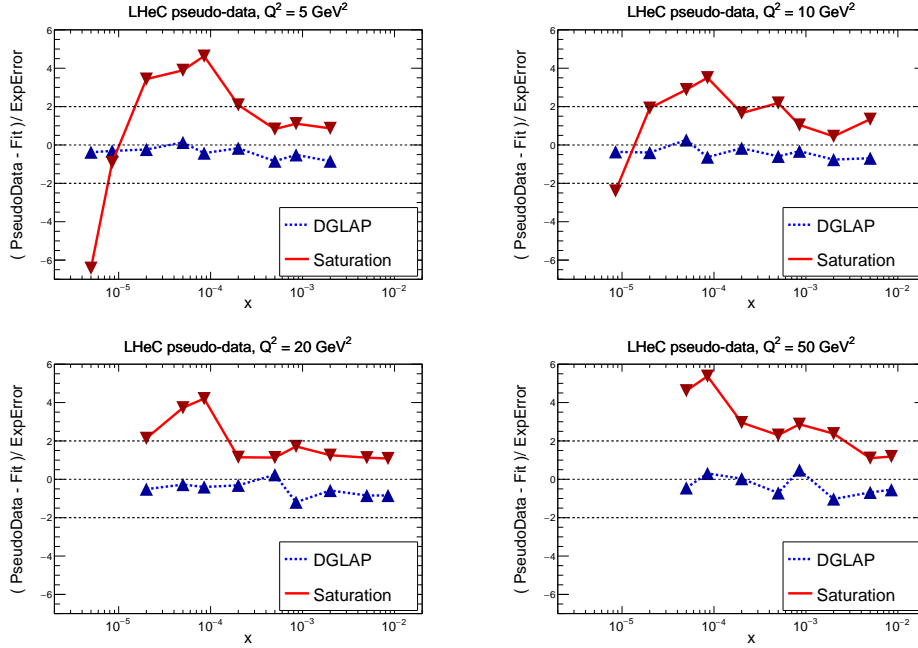


Figure 2.11: The pulls between the post-fit prediction and the central value of the LHeC pseudodata, Eq. (2.5), for four different bins in Q^2 . We compare the results of the profiling where the LHeC pseudodata has been generated using a consistent DGLAP theory with that partially based on the saturation calculations.

1459 evolution effects at small- x it would be crucial to ensure a lever arm in Q^2 as large as possible
 1460 in the perturbative region. This way it becomes possible to disentangle the different scaling
 1461 in Q^2 for the two cases. The lack of a sufficiently large lever arm in Q^2 at HERA at small x
 1462 could explain in part why both frameworks are able to describe the same structure function
 1463 measurements at the qualitative level. Furthermore, we find that amplifying the significance
 1464 of these subtle effects can be achieved by monitoring the χ^2 behaviour in the Q^2 bins more
 1465 affected by the saturation corrections. The reason is that the total χ^2 , such as that reported
 1466 in Fig. 2.10, is somewhat less informative since the deviations at small- Q are washed out by
 1467 the good agreement between theory and pseudodata in the rest of the kinematical range of the
 1468 LHeC summarised in Fig. 2.9.

1469 To conclude this analysis, in Fig. 2.12 we display the comparison between the PDF4LHC15
 1470 baseline with the results of the PDF profiling of the LHeC pseudodata for the gluon (left) and
 1471 quark singlet (right) for $Q = 10$ GeV. We show the cases where the pseudodata is generated
 1472 using DGLAP calculations and where it is partially based on the GBW saturation model (for
 1473 $x \lesssim 10^{-4}$). We find that the distortion induced by the mismatch between theory and pseudodata
 1474 in the saturation case is typically larger than the PDF uncertainties expected once the LHeC
 1475 constraints are taken into account. While of course in a realistic situation such a comparison
 1476 would not be possible, the results of Fig. 2.12 show that saturation-induced effects are expected
 1477 to be larger than the typical PDF errors in the LHeC era, and thus that it should be possible to
 1478 tell them apart using for example tools such as the pull analysis of Fig. 2.11 or other statistical
 1479 methods.

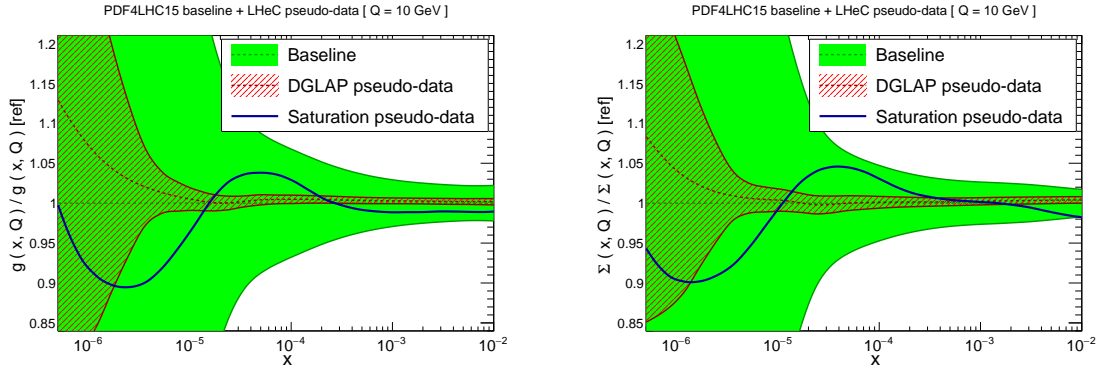


Figure 2.12: Comparison between the PDF4LHC15 baseline (green band) with the results of the profiling of the LHeC pseudodata for the gluon (left) and quark singlet (right) for $Q = 10$ GeV. We show the cases where the pseudodata is generated using DGLAP calculations (red hatched band) and where it is partially based on the GBW saturation model (blue curve).

1480 Summary

1481 Here we have assessed the feasibility of disentangling DGLAP evolution from non-linear effects at
 1482 the LHeC. By means of a QCD analysis where LHeC pseudodata is generated using a saturation
 1483 model, we have demonstrated that the LHeC should be possible to identify non-linear effects
 1484 with large statistical significance, provided their size is the one predicted by current calculations
 1485 such as the that of [205] that have been tuned to HERA data. A more refined analysis would
 1486 require to study whether or not small- x BFKL resummation effects can partially mask the
 1487 impact of non-linear dynamics, though this is unlikely since the main difference arises in their
 1488 Q^2 scaling. The discovery of non-linear dynamics would represent an important milestone for
 1489 the physics program of the LHeC, demonstrating the onset of a new gluon-dominated regime of
 1490 the strong interactions and paving the way for detailed studies of the properties of this new state
 1491 of matter. Such discovery would have also implications outside nuclear and particle physics, for
 1492 instance it would affect the theory predictions for the scattering of ultra-high energy neutrinos
 1493 with matter [207].

1494 2.2.3 Low x and the Longitudinal Structure Function F_L

1495 DIS Cross Section and the Challenge to Access F_L

1496 The inclusive, deep inelastic electron-proton scattering cross section at low $Q^2 \ll M_Z^2$,

$$\frac{Q^4 x}{2\pi\alpha^2 Y_+} \cdot \frac{d^2\sigma}{dx dQ^2} = \sigma_r \simeq F_2(x, Q^2) - f(y) \cdot F_L(x, Q^2) = F_2 \cdot \left(1 - f(y) \frac{R}{1+R}\right) \quad (2.6)$$

1497 is defined by two proton structure functions, F_2 and F_L , with $y = Q^2/sx$, $Y_+ = 1 + (1-y)^2$
 1498 and $f(y) = y^2/Y_+$. The cross section may also be expressed [208] as a sum of two contributions,
 1499 $\sigma_r \propto (\sigma_T + \epsilon\sigma_L)$, referring to the transverse and longitudinal polarisation state of the exchanged
 1500 boson, with ϵ characterising the ratio of the longitudinal to the transverse polarisation. The
 1501 ratio of the longitudinal to transverse cross sections is termed

$$R(x, Q^2) = \frac{\sigma_L}{\sigma_T} = \frac{F_L}{F_2 - F_L}, \quad (2.7)$$

1502 which is related to F_2 and F_L as given above. Due to the positivity of the cross sections $\sigma_{L,T}$
 1503 one observes that $F_L \leq F_2$. The reduced cross section σ_r , Eq. (2.6), is therefore a direct measure
 1504 of F_2 , apart from a limited region of high y where a contribution of F_L may be sizeable. To
 1505 leading order, for spin 1/2 particles, one expected $R = 0$. The initial measurements of R at
 1506 SLAC [209,210] showed that R was indeed small, $R \simeq 0.18$, which was taken as evidence for
 1507 quarks to carry spin 1/2.

1508 The task to measure F_L thus requires to precisely measure the inclusive DIS cross section near
 1509 to $y = 1$ and to then disentangle the two structure functions by exploiting the $f(y) = y^2/Y_+$
 1510 variation which depends on x , Q^2 and s . By varying the centre-of-mass (cms) beam energy, s , one
 1511 can disentangle F_2 and F_L obtaining independent measurements at each common, fixed point of
 1512 x , Q^2 . This is particularly challenging not only because the F_L part is small, calling for utmost
 1513 precision, but also because it requires to measure at high y . The inelasticity $y = 1 - E'/E_e$,
 1514 however, is large only for scattered electron energies E'_e much smaller than the electron beam
 1515 energy E_e , for example $E'_e = 2.7$ GeV for $y = 0.9$ at HERA ⁴. In the region where E' is a few GeV
 1516 only, the electron identification becomes a major problem and the electromagnetic ($\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$)
 1517 and hadronic backgrounds, mainly from unrecognised photoproduction, rise strongly.

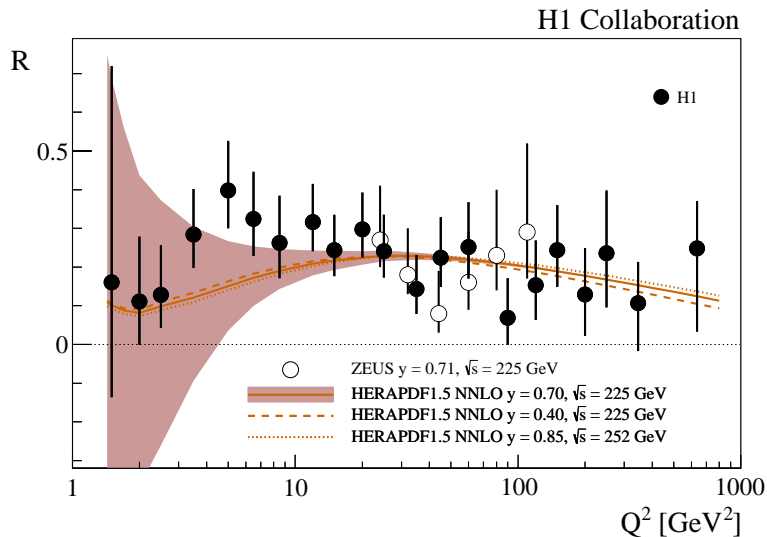


Figure 2.13: Measurement of the structure function ratio $R = F_L/(F_2 - F_L)$ by H1 (solid points) and ZEUS (open circles), from a variation of proton beam energy in the final half year of HERA operation. The curve represents an NNLO QCD fit analysis of the other HERA data. This becomes uncertain for Q^2 below 10 GeV^2 where the Q^2 dependence of F_2 at HERA does not permit an accurate determination of the gluon density which dominates the prediction on F_L .

1518 The history and achievements on F_L , the role of HERA and the prospects as sketched in the
 1519 CDR of the LHeC, were summarised in detail in [21]. The measurement of F_L at HERA [211]
 1520 was given very limited time and it collected about 5.9 and 12.2 pb^{-1} of data at reduced beam
 1521 energies which were analysed together with about 100 pb^{-1} at nominal HERA energies. The
 1522 result may well be illustrated with the data obtained on the ratio $R(x, Q^2)$ shown in Fig. 2.13.
 1523 To good approximation, $R(x, Q^2)$ is a constant which was determined as $R = 0.23 \pm 0.04$,
 1524 in good agreement with the SLAC values of $R \simeq 0.18$ despite the hugely extended kinematic
 1525 range. The rather small variation of R towards small x , at fixed $y = Q^2/sx$, may appear to be

⁴The nominal electron beam energy E_e at the LHeC is doubled as compared to HERA. Ideally one would like to vary the proton beam energy in an F_L measurement at the LHeC, which yet would affect the hadron collider operation. In the present study it was therefore considered to lower E_e which may be done independently of the HL-LHC.

1526 astonishing as one observed F_2 to strongly rise towards low x . A constant R of e.g. 0.25 means
 1527 that $F_2 = (1 + R)F_L/R$ is five times larger than F_L , and that they rise together, as they have
 1528 a common origin, the rise of the gluon density. This can be understood in approximations to
 1529 the DGLAP expression of the Q^2 derivative of F_2 and the so-called Altarelli-Martinelli relation
 1530 of F_L to the parton densities [212, 213], see the discussion in Ref. [21]. The resulting H1 value
 1531 also obeyed the condition $R \leq 0.37$, which had been obtained in a rigorous attempt to derive
 1532 the dipole model for inelastic DIS [214].

1533 **Parton Evolution at Low x**

1534 Parton distributions are to be extracted from experiment as their x dependence and flavour
 1535 sharing are not predicted in QCD. They acquire a particular meaning through the theoretical
 1536 prescription of their kinematic evolution. PDFs, as they are frequently used for LHC analyses,
 1537 are predominantly defined through the now classic DGLAP formalism, in which the Q^2 depen-
 1538 dence of parton distributions is regulated by splitting functions while the DIS cross section,
 1539 determined by the structure functions, is calculable by folding the PDFs with coefficient func-
 1540 tions. Deep inelastic scattering is known to be the most suited process to extract PDFs from
 1541 the experiment, for which the HERA collider has so far delivered the most useful data. Through
 1542 factorisation theorems the PDFs are considered to be universal such that PDFs extracted in ep
 1543 DIS shall be suited to describe for example Drell-Yan scattering cross sections in pp at the LHC.
 1544 This view has been formulated to third order pQCD already and been quite successful in the
 1545 interpretation of LHC measurements, which by themselves also constrain PDFs in parton-parton
 1546 scattering sub-processes.

1547 As commented in Sec. 2.2.1, the question has long been posed about the universal validity of
 1548 the DGLAP formalism, especially for the region of small Bjorken x where logarithms $\propto \ln(1/x)$
 1549 become very sizeable. This feature of the perturbation expansion is expected to significantly
 1550 modify the splitting functions. This in turn changes the theory underlying the physics of parton
 1551 distributions, and predictions for the LHC and its successor will correspondingly have to be
 1552 altered. This mechanism, for an equivalent Q^2 of a few GeV^2 , is illustrated in Fig. 2.14, taken
 1553 from Ref. [197]. It shows the x dependence of the gluon-gluon and the quark-gluon splitting
 1554 functions, P_{gg} and P_{qg} , calculated in DGLAP QCD. It is observed that at NNLO P_{gg} strongly
 1555 decreases towards small x , becoming smaller than P_{qg} for x below 10^{-4} . Resummation of
 1556 the large $\ln(1/x)$ terms, see Ref. [197], here performed to next-to-leading log x , restores the
 1557 dominance of the gg splitting over the qg one. Consequently, the gluon distribution in the
 1558 resummed theory exceeds the one derived in pure DGLAP. While this observation has been
 1559 supported by the HERA data, it yet relies on limited kinematic coverage and precision. The
 1560 LHeC will examine this in detail, at a hugely extended range and is thus expected to resolve the
 1561 long known question about the validity of the BFKL evolution and the transition from DGLAP
 1562 to BFKL as x decreases while Q^2 remains large enough for pQCD to apply.

1563 **Kinematics of Higgs Production at the HL-LHC**

1564 The clarification of the evolution and the accurate and complete determination of the parton
 1565 distributions is of direct importance for the LHC. This can be illustrated with the kinematics of
 1566 Higgs production at HL-LHC which is dominated by gluon-gluon fusion. With the luminosity
 1567 upgrade, the detector acceptance is being extended into the forward region to pseudorapidity
 1568 values of $|\eta| = 4$, where $\eta = \ln \tan \theta/2$ is a very good approximation of the rapidity. In Drell-Yan
 1569 scattering of two partons with Bjorken x values of $x_{1,2}$ these are related to the rapidity via the

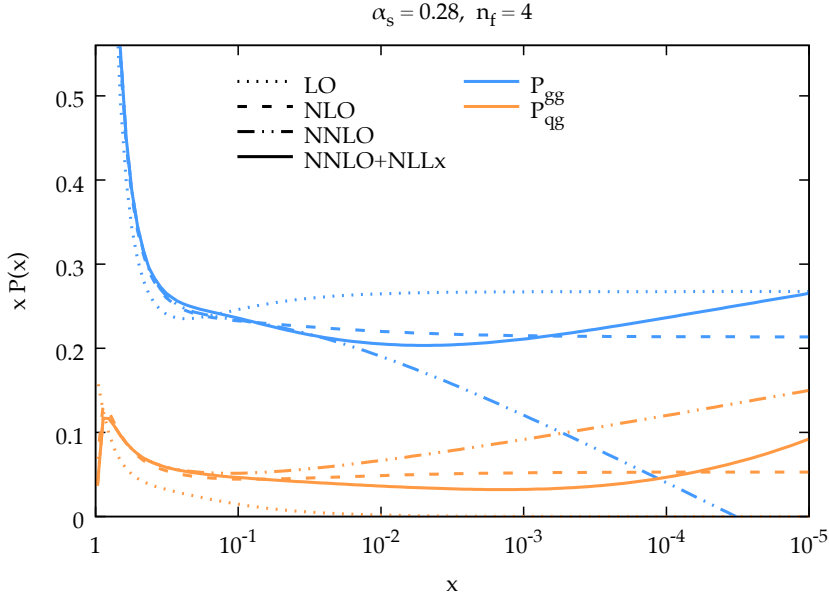


Figure 2.14: Calculation of splitting functions P_{gg} (top, blue) and P_{qg} (bottom, brown) in resummed NNLO (solid) as compared to non-resummed calculations at LO (dotted), NLO (dashed) and NNLO (dashed-dotted) as functions of x for $n_f = 4$ at a large value of α_s corresponding to a Q^2 of a few GeV^2 , from Ref. [197]. The resummed calculation is seen to restore the dominance of P_{gg} over P_{qg} as x becomes small (towards the right side), which is violated at NNLO.

1570 relation $x_{1,2} = \exp(\pm\eta) \cdot M/\sqrt{s}$ where $\sqrt{s} = 2E_p$ is the cms energy and M the mass of the
1571 produced particle. It is interesting to see that $\eta = \pm 4$ corresponds to $x_1 = 0.5$ and $x = 0.00016$
1572 for the SM Higgs boson of mass $M = 125 \text{ GeV}$. Consequently, Higgs physics at the HL-LHC
1573 will depend on understanding PDFs at high x , a challenge resolved by the LHeC too, and on
1574 clarifying the evolution at small x . At the FCC-hh, in its 100 TeV energy version, the small x
1575 value for $\eta = 4$ will be as low as $2 \cdot 10^{-5}$. Both the laws of QCD and the resulting phenomenology
1576 of particle production at the HL-LHC and its successor demand to clarify the evolution of the
1577 parton contents at small x as a function of the resolution scale Q^2 . This concerns in particular
1578 the unambiguous, accurate determination of the gluon distribution, which dominates the small- x
1579 parton densities and as well the production of the Higgs boson in pp scattering.

1580 Indications for Resummation in H1 F_L Data

1581 The simultaneous measurement of the two structure functions F_2 and F_L is the cleanest way
1582 to establish new parton dynamics at low x . This holds because their independent constraints
1583 on the dominating gluon density at low x ought to lead to consistent results. In other words,
1584 one may constrain all partons with a complete PDF analysis of the inclusive cross section in
1585 the kinematic region where its F_L part is negligible and confront the F_L measurement with
1586 this result. A significant deviation from F_L data signals the necessity to introduce new, non-
1587 DGLAP physics in the theory of parton evolution, especially at small x . The salient value of the
1588 F_L structure function results from its inclusive character enabling a clean theoretical treatment
1589 as has early on been recognised [212, 213]. This procedure has recently been illustrated [197]
1590 using the H1 data on F_L [215] which are the only accurate data from HERA at smallest x . The
1591 result is shown in Fig. 2.15. One observes the trend described above: the resummed prediction
1592 is higher than the pure NNLO curve, and the description at smallest x , below $5 \cdot 10^{-4}$, appears

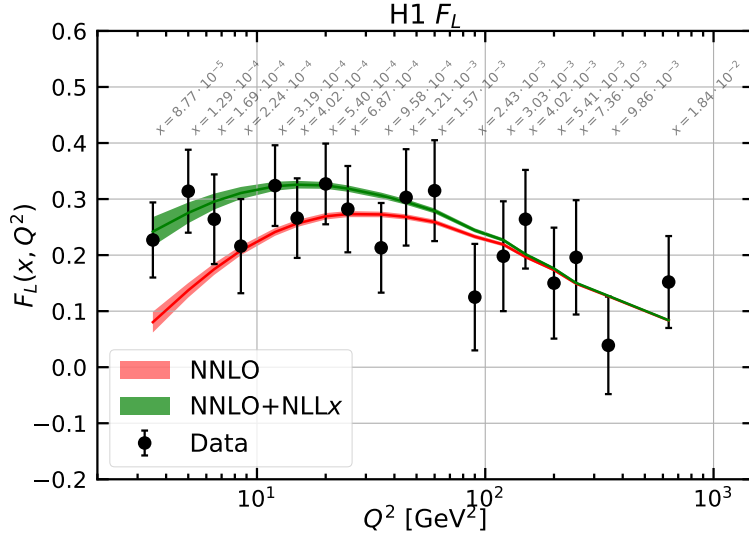


Figure 2.15: Measurement of the longitudinal structure function F_L , obtained as an average results over a number of x dependent points at fixed Q^2 , plotted vs Q^2 with the corresponding x values indicated in grey. Red curve: NNLO fit to the H1 cross section data; green curve: NNLO fit including NLLx resummation, from Ref. [197].

1593 to be improved. The difference between the two curves increases as x decreases. However, due to
 1594 the peculiarity of the DIS kinematics, which relates x to Q^2/sy , one faces the difficulty of
 1595 Q^2 decreasing with x at fixed s for large $y \geq 0.6$, which is the region of sensitivity to F_L . Thus
 1596 one not only wishes to improve substantially the precision of the F_L data but also to increase
 1597 substantially s in order to avoid the region of non-perturbative behaviour while testing theory
 1598 at small x . This is the double and principal advantage which the LHeC offers - a much increased
 1599 precision and more than a decade of extension of kinematic range.

1600 The Longitudinal Structure Function at the LHeC

1601 Following the method described above, inclusive cross section data have been simulated for
 1602 $E_p = 7$ TeV and three electron beam energies E_e of 60, ~ 30 and 20 GeV. The assumed integrated
 1603 luminosity values are 10, ~ 1 and 1 fb $^{-1}$, respectively. These are about a factor of a hundred
 1604 larger than the corresponding H1 luminosities. At large y , the kinematics is best reconstructed
 1605 using the scattered electron energy, E'_e , and polar angle, θ_e . The experimental methods to
 1606 calibrate the angular and energy measurements are described in [211]. For the present study
 1607 similar results are assumed: for E'_e a scale uncertainty of 0.5% at small y (compared to 0.2%
 1608 with H1) rising linearly to 1.2%, in the range of $y = 0.4$ to 0.9. For the polar angle, given
 1609 the superior quality of the anticipated LHeC Silicon tracker as compared to the H1 tracker,
 1610 it is assumed that θ_e may be calibrated to 0.2mrad, as compared to 0.5mrad at H1. The
 1611 residual photo-production background contamination is assumed to be 0.5% at largest y , twice
 1612 better than with H1. There is further an assumption made on the radiative corrections which
 1613 are assumed to be uncertain to 1% and treated as a correlated error. The main challenge is to
 1614 reduce the uncorrelated uncertainty, which here was varied between 0.2 and 0.5%. This is about
 1615 ten to three times more accurate than the H1 result which may be a reasonable assumption: the
 1616 hundred fold increase in statistics sets a totally different scale to the treatment of uncorrelated
 1617 uncertainties, as from imperfect simulations, trigger efficiency or Monte Carlo statistics. It

1618 is very difficult to transport previous results to the modern and future conditions. It could,
 1619 however, be an important fix point if one knows that the most precise measurement of Z boson
 production by ATLAS at the LHC had a total systematic error of just 0.5% [216].

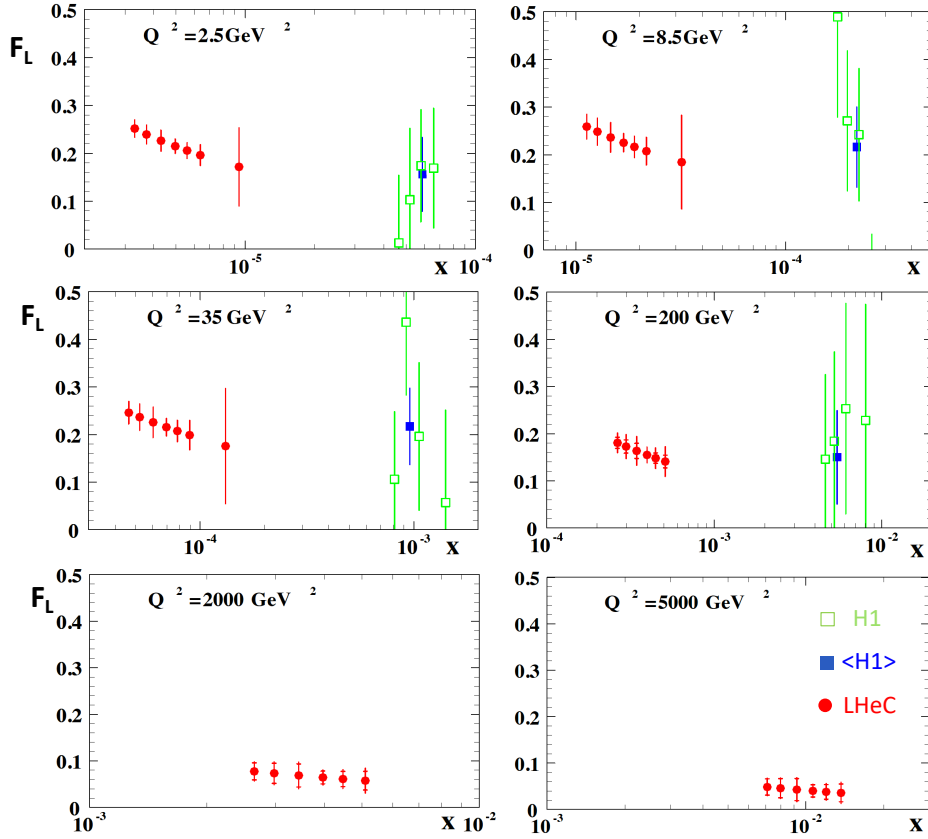


Figure 2.16: H1 measurement and LHeC simulation of data on the longitudinal structure function $F_L(x, Q^2)$. Green: Data by H1, for selected Q^2 intervals from Ref. [215]; Blue: Weighted average of the (green) data points at fixed Q^2 ; Red: Simulated data from an F_L measurement at the LHeC with varying beam energy, see text. The H1 error bars denote the total measurement uncertainty. The LHeC inner error bars represent the data statistics, visible only for $Q^2 \geq 200 \text{ GeV}^2$, while the outer error bars are the total uncertainty. Since the F_L measurement is sensitive only at high values of inelasticity, $y = Q^2/sx$, each Q^2 value is sensitive only to a certain limited interval of x values which increase with Q^2 . Thus each panel has a different x axis. The covered x range similarly varies with s , i.e. H1 x values are roughly twenty times larger at a given Q^2 . There are no H1 data for high Q^2 , beyond 1000 GeV^2 , see Ref. [215].

1620

1621 The method here used is that of a simple straight-line fit of $\sigma_r = F_2 - f(y)F_L$ (Eq. (2.6)), in
 1622 which F_L is obtained as the slope of the $f(y)$ dependence⁵. The predictions for F_2 and F_L were
 1623 obtained using LO formulae for the PDF set of MSTW 2008. In this method any common factor
 1624 does not alter the absolute uncertainty of F_L . This also implies that the estimated absolute error
 1625 on F_L is independent of whether F_L is larger or smaller than here assumed. For illustration,
 1626 F_L was scaled by a factor of two. Since $f(y) \propto y^2$, the accuracy is optimised with a non-linear
 1627 choice of lowered beam energies. The fit takes into account cross section uncertainties and their
 1628 correlations, calculated numerically following [25], by considering each source separately and
 1629 adding the results of the various correlated sources to one correlated systematic error which is
 1630 added quadratically to the statistical and uncorrelated uncertainties to obtain one total error.

⁵Better results were achieved by H1 using a χ^2 minimisation technique, see Ref. [217], which for the rough estimate on the projected F_L uncertainty at the LHeC has not been considered.

1631 The result is illustrated in Fig. 2.16 presenting the x -dependent results, for some selected Q^2
 1632 values, of both H1, with their average over x , and the prospect LHeC results. It reflects the
 1633 huge extension of kinematic range, towards low x and high Q^2 by the LHeC as compared to
 1634 HERA. It also illustrates the striking improvement in precision which the LHeC promises to
 1635 provide. The F_L measurement will cover an x range from $2 \cdot 10^{-6}$ to above $x = 0.01$. Surely,
 1636 when comparing with Fig. 2.15, one can safely expect that any non-DGLAP parton evolution
 1637 would be discovered with such data, in their combination with a very precise F_2 measurement.

1638 A few comments are in order on the variation of the different error components with the kine-
 1639 matics, essentially Q^2 since the whole F_L sensitivity is restricted to high y which in turn for each
 1640 Q^2 defines a not wide interval of x values covered. One observes in Fig. 2.16 that the precision
 1641 is spoiled towards large $x \propto 1/y$, see e.g. the result for $Q^2 = 8.5 \text{ GeV}^2$. The assumptions on
 1642 the integrated luminosity basically define a Q^2 range for the measurement. For example, the
 1643 statistical uncertainty for $Q^2 = 4.5 \text{ GeV}^2$ and $x = 10^{-5}$, a medium x value at this Q^2 interval,
 1644 is only 0.6 % (or 0.001 in absolute for $F_L = 0.22$). At $Q^2 = 2000 \text{ GeV}^2$ it rises to 21 % (or 0.012
 1645 for $F_L = 0.064$). One thus can perform the F_L measurement at the LHeC, with a focus on only
 1646 small x , with much less luminosity than the 1 fb^{-1} here used. The relative size of the various
 1647 systematic error sources also varies considerably, which is due to the kinematic relations between
 1648 angles and energies and their dependence on x and Q^2 . This is detailed in [25]. It implies, for ex-
 1649 ample, that the 0.2 mrad polar angle scale uncertainty becomes the dominant error at small Q^2 ,
 1650 which is the backward region where the electron is scattered near the beam axis in the direction
 1651 of the electron beam. For large Q^2 , however, the electron is more centrally scattered and the
 1652 θ_e calibration requirement may be more relaxed. The E'_e scale uncertainty has a twice smaller
 1653 effect than that due to the θ_e calibration at lowest Q^2 but becomes the dominant correlated
 1654 systematic error source at high Q^2 . The here used overall assumptions on scale uncertainties
 1655 are therefore only rough first approximations and would be replaced by kinematics and detector
 1656 dependent requirements when this measurement may be pursued. These could also exploit the
 1657 cross calibration opportunities which result from the redundant determination of the inclusive
 1658 DIS scattering kinematics through both the electron and the hadronic final state. This had been
 1659 noted very early at HERA times, see Ref. [22,24,218] and was worked out in considerable detail
 1660 by both H1 and ZEUS using independent and different methods. A feature used by H1 in their
 1661 F_L measurement includes a number of decays such as $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ and $J/\psi \rightarrow e^+e^-$ for calibrating
 1662 the low energy measurement or $K_s^0 \rightarrow \pi^+\pi^-$ and $\Lambda \rightarrow p\pi$ for the determination of tracker scales,
 1663 see Ref. [211].

1664 It is obvious that the prospect to measure F_L as presented here is striking. For nearly a decade,
 1665 Guido Altarelli was a chief theory advisor to the development of the LHeC. In 2011, he publishes
 1666 an article [217], in honour of Mario Greco, about *The Early Days of QCD (as seen from Rome)*
 1667 in which he describes one of his main achievements [212], and persistent irritation, regarding
 1668 the longitudinal structure function, F_L , and its measurement: *... The present data, recently*
 1669 *obtained by the H1 experiment at DESY, are in agreement with our [!this] LO QCD prediction*
 1670 *but the accuracy of the test is still far from being satisfactory for such a basic quantity.* The
 1671 LHeC developments had not been rapid enough to let Guido see results of much higher quality
 1672 on F_L with which the existence of departures from the DGLAP evolution, to high orders pQCD,
 1673 may be expected to most safely be discovered.

1674 2.2.4 Relation to Ultrahigh Energy Neutrino and Astroparticle physics

1675 The small- x region probed by the LHeC is also very important in the context of ultra-high energy
 1676 neutrino physics and astroparticle physics. Highly energetic neutrinos provide a unique window

1677 into the Universe, due to their weak interaction with matter, for a review see for example [219].
 1678 They can travel long distances from distant sources, undeflected by the magnetic fields inside
 1679 and in between galaxies, and thus provide complementary information to cosmic rays, gamma
 1680 rays and gravitational wave signals. The IceCube observatory on Antarctica [220] is sensitive
 1681 to neutrinos with energies from 100 GeV up (above 10 GeV with the use of their Deep Core
 1682 detector). Knowledge about low- x physics becomes indispensable in two contexts: neutrino
 1683 interactions and neutrino production. At energies beyond the TeV scale the dominant part of the
 1684 cross section is due to the neutrino DIS CC and NC interaction with the hadronic targets [219].

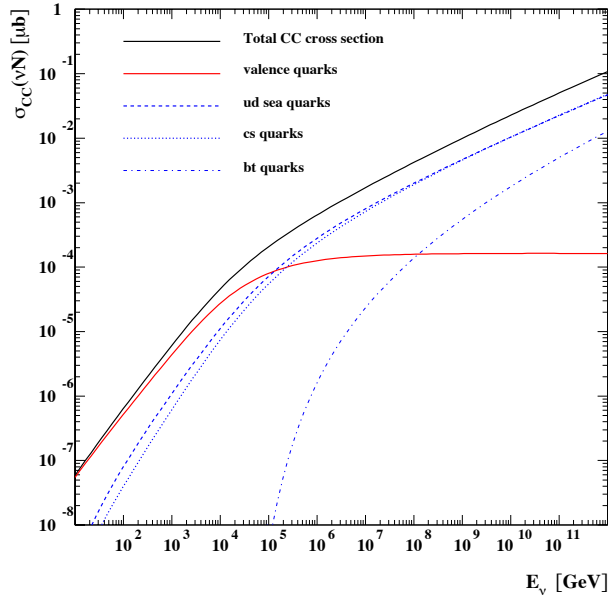


Figure 2.17: Charged current cross section for the neutrino - nucleon interaction on a isoscalar target as a function of neutrino energy. The total CC cross section is broken down into several contributions due to valence, up-down, strange-charm and bottom-top quarks. The calculation was based on Ref. [221].

1685 In Fig. 2.17 we show the charged current neutrino cross section as a function of the neutrino
 1686 energy for an isoscalar target (in the laboratory frame where the target is at rest), using a
 1687 calculation [221] based on the resummed model in [177]. We see that at energies below ~ 50 TeV
 1688 the cross section grows roughly linearly with energy, and in this region it is dominated by
 1689 contributions from the large- x valence region. Beyond that energy the neutrino cross section
 1690 grows slower, roughly as a power $\sim E_\nu^\lambda$ with $\lambda \simeq 0.3$. This high energy behaviour is totally
 1691 controlled by the small- x behaviour of the parton distributions. The dominance of the sea
 1692 contributions to the cross section is clearly seen in Fig. 2.17. To illustrate more precisely the
 1693 contributing values of x and Q^2 , in Fig. 2.18 we show the differential cross section for the CC
 1694 interaction $xQ^2 d\sigma^{CC}/dx dQ^2$ for a neutrino energy $E_\nu = 10^{11}$ GeV (in the frame where the
 1695 hadronic target is at rest). We see a clear peak of the cross section at roughly a value of
 1696 $Q^2 = M_W^2$ and an x value

$$x \simeq \frac{M_W^2}{2ME_\nu}, \quad (2.8)$$

1697 which in this case is about 3×10^{-8} . We note that IceCube extracted the DIS cross section from
 1698 neutrino observations [222] in the region of neutrino energies 10 – 1000 TeV. The extraction
 1699 is consistent, within the large error bands, with the predictions based on the QCD, like those

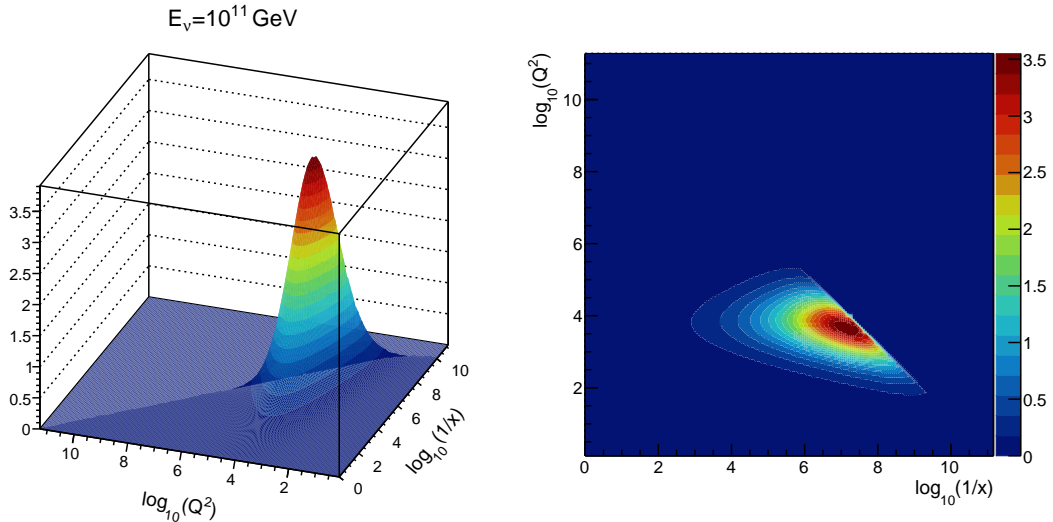


Figure 2.18: Differential charged current neutrino cross section $10^5 \cdot xQ^2 d\sigma^{CC}/dx dQ^2$ [nb] as a function of Q^2 and x for fixed neutrino energy $E_\nu = 10^{11}$ GeV. Left: surface plot; right: contour plot.

1700 illustrated in Fig. 2.17. It is important to note that the IceCube extraction is limited to these
 1701 energies by the statistics due to the steeply falling flux of neutrinos at high energy. We thus
 1702 see that the neutrino interaction cross section at high energies is sensitive to a region which is
 1703 currently completely unconstrained by existing precision DIS data.

1704 Another instance where dynamics at low x are crucial for neutrino physics is in understand-
 1705 ing the mechanisms of ultra-high energy neutrino production. The neutrinos are produced in
 1706 interactions which involve hadrons, either in γp or in pp interactions. They emerge as decay
 1707 products of pions, kaons and charmed mesons, and possibly beauty mesons if the energy is high
 1708 enough [223]. For example, in the atmosphere neutrinos are produced in the interactions of the
 1709 highly energetic cosmic rays with nitrogen and oxygen nuclei. The lower energy part of the
 1710 atmospheric neutrino spectrum, up to about 100 TeV or so, is dominated by the decay of pions
 1711 and kaons. This is called the conventional atmospheric neutrino flux. Above that energy the
 1712 neutrino flux is dominated by the decay of the shorter-lived charmed mesons. Thus, this part of
 1713 the neutrino flux is called the prompt-neutrino flux. The reason why the prompt-neutrino flux
 1714 dominates at high energies is precisely related to the life-time of the intermediate mesons (and
 1715 also baryons like Λ_c). The longer lived pions and kaons have a high probability of interacting
 1716 before they decay, thus degrading their energy and leading to a steeply falling neutrino flux.
 1717 The cross section for the production of charmed mesons is smaller than that for pions and kaons,
 1718 but the charmed mesons D^\pm, D^0, D_s and baryon Λ_c live shorter than pions and kaons, and thus
 1719 decay prior to any interaction. Thus, at energies about 100 TeV the prompt neutrino flux will
 1720 dominate over the conventional atmospheric neutrino flux. Therefore, the knowledge of this part
 1721 of the spectrum is essential as it provides a background for the sought-after astrophysical neu-
 1722 trinos [224]. Charmed mesons in high energy hadron-hadron interactions are produced through
 1723 gluon-gluon fusion into $c\bar{c}$ pairs, where one gluon carries rather large x and the other one carries
 1724 very small x . Since the scales are small, of the order of the charm masses, the values of the
 1725 longitudinal momentum fractions involved are also very small and thus the knowledge of the
 1726 parton distributions in this region is essential [225]. The predictions for the prompt neutrino
 1727 flux become extremely sensitive to the behaviour of the gluon distribution at low x (and low
 1728 Q^2), where novel QCD phenomena like resummation as well as gluon saturation are likely to
 1729 occur [226].

1730 Finally, the low- x dynamics will become even more important at the HL-LHC and FCC hadron
 1731 colliders. With increasing centre-of-mass energy, hadron colliders will probe values of x pre-
 1732 viously unconstrained by HERA data. It is evident that all the predictions in pp interactions
 1733 at high energy will heavily rely on the PDF extrapolations to the small x region which carry
 1734 large uncertainties. As discussed in detail in this Section, resummation will play an increasingly
 1735 important role in the low x region of PDFs. A precision DIS machine is thus an indispensable
 1736 tool for constraining the QCD dynamics at low x with great precision as well as for providing
 1737 complementary information and independent measurements to hadronic colliders.

1738 2.2.5 Impact of New Small- x Dynamics on Hadron Collider Physics

1739 As discussed in Subsections 2.2.1 and 2.2.3, the presence of new dynamics at small x as claimed in
 1740 Refs. [192, 196, 197] will have impact on hadronic observables. The impact is stronger for larger
 1741 energies, therefore more important for the FCC-hh than for the LHC. But it may compete
 1742 with other uncertainties and thus become crucial for precision studies even at LHC energies.
 1743 Studies on the impact of non-linear dynamics at hadron colliders have been devoted mainly
 1744 to photoproduction in UPCs, see e.g. [227–229] and Refs. therein for the case of gauge boson
 1745 production. In this section we focus on the effect of resummation at small x .

1746 While hadronic data like jet, Drell-Yan or top production at existing energies do not have much
 1747 constraining power at low x [192] and thus need not be included in the extraction of PDFs
 1748 using resummed theoretical predictions, this fact does not automatically mean that the impact
 1749 of resummation is not visible at large scales for large energies. Indeed the PDFs obtained with
 1750 small- x resummation may change at low energies in the region of x relevant for hadronic data,
 1751 thereby giving an effect also at higher energies after evolving to those scales. A consistent
 1752 inclusion of resummation effects on hadronic observables is thus crucial for achieving precision.
 1753 The difficulty for implementing resummation on different observables lies in the fact that not only
 1754 evolution equations should include it but also the computation of the relevant matrix elements
 1755 for the observable must be performed with matching accuracy.

1756 Until present, the only observable that has been examined in detail is Higgs production cross
 1757 section through gluon fusion [230]. Other observables like Drell-Yan [231] or heavy quark [232]
 1758 production are under study and they will become available in the near future.

1759 For $gg \rightarrow H$, the LL resummation of the matrix elements matched to fixed order at N³LO was
 1760 done in Refs. [230, 233] and the results are shown in Figs. 2.19 and 2.20. Fig. 2.19 shows the
 1761 increasing impact of resummation on the cross section with increasing energy. It also illustrates
 1762 the fact that the main effect of resummation comes through the modification of the extraction
 1763 of parton densities and their extrapolation, not through the modification of the matrix elements
 1764 or the details of the matching.

1765 Fig. 2.20 indicates the size of the different uncertainties on the absolute values of the cross section
 1766 with increasing accuracy of the perturbative expansion, at HL-LHC and FCC-hh energies. For
 1767 N³LO(+LL) it can be seen that while at the HL-LHC, the effect of resummation is of the same
 1768 order as other uncertainties like those coming scale variations, PDFs and subleading logarithms,
 1769 this is not the case for the FCC where it can be clearly seen that it will be the dominant one.
 1770 Resummation should also strongly affect the rapidity distributions, a key need for extrapolation
 1771 of observed to total cross sections. In particular, rapidity distributions are more directly sensitive
 1772 to PDFs at given values of momentum fraction x , and therefore in regions where this momentum
 1773 fraction is small (large rapidities) the effect of resummation may be sizeable also at lower collider
 1774 energies. These facts underline the need of understanding the dynamics at small x for any kind

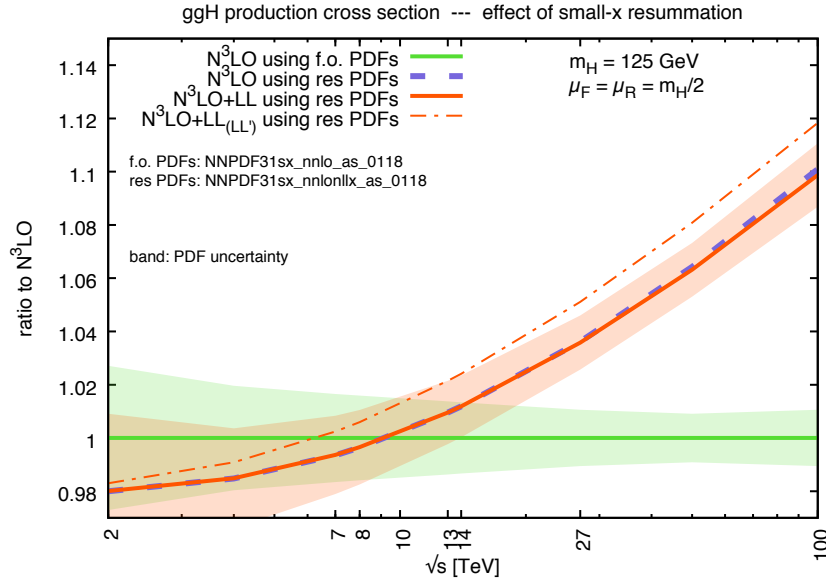


Figure 2.19: Ratio of the $N^3\text{LO}$ Higgs cross section with and without resummation to the $N^3\text{LO}$ fixed-order cross section, as a function of the collider centre-of-mass energy. “f.o.” denotes fixed order, “res” denotes resummed and “LL” a different anomalous dimension matching at leading logarithmic accuracy, see the legend on the plot and Ref. [230] for details. The PDFs used are from the global dataset of Ref. [196]. Figure taken from Ref. [230].

1775 of precision physics measurements at future hadronic colliders, with increasing importance for
 1776 increasing energies.

1777 Finally, it should be mentioned that a different kind of factorisation, called transverse momentum
 1778 (TMD) factorisation [6, 234–238], may have an effect on large scale observables in hadronic
 1779 colliders. The extension of the TMD evolution equations towards small x [239] and the relation of
 1780 such factorisation with new dynamics at small x , either through high-energy factorisation [240–
 1781 243] or with the CGC [244, 245], is under development [246].

1782 2.3 Diffractive Deep Inelastic Scattering at the LHeC

1783 2.3.1 Introduction and Formalism

1784 An important discovery of HERA was the observation of a large ($\sim 10\%$) fraction of diffractive
 1785 events in DIS [247, 248]. In these events the proton stays intact or dissociates into a state with
 1786 the proton quantum numbers, despite undergoing a violent, highly energetic collision, and is
 1787 separated from the rest of the produced particles by a large rapidity gap. In a series of ground-
 1788 breaking papers (see Ref. [249] for a review), the HERA experiments determined the deep
 1789 inelastic structure of the t -channel exchange in these events in the form of diffractive parton
 1790 densities.

1791 The precise measurement of diffraction in DIS is of great importance for our understanding of the
 1792 strong interaction. First, the mechanism through which a composite strongly interacting object
 1793 interacts perturbatively while keeping colour neutrality offers information about the confinement
 1794 mechanism. Second, diffraction is known to be highly sensitive to the low- x partonic content
 1795 of the proton and its evolution with energy and it therefore has considerable promise to reveal

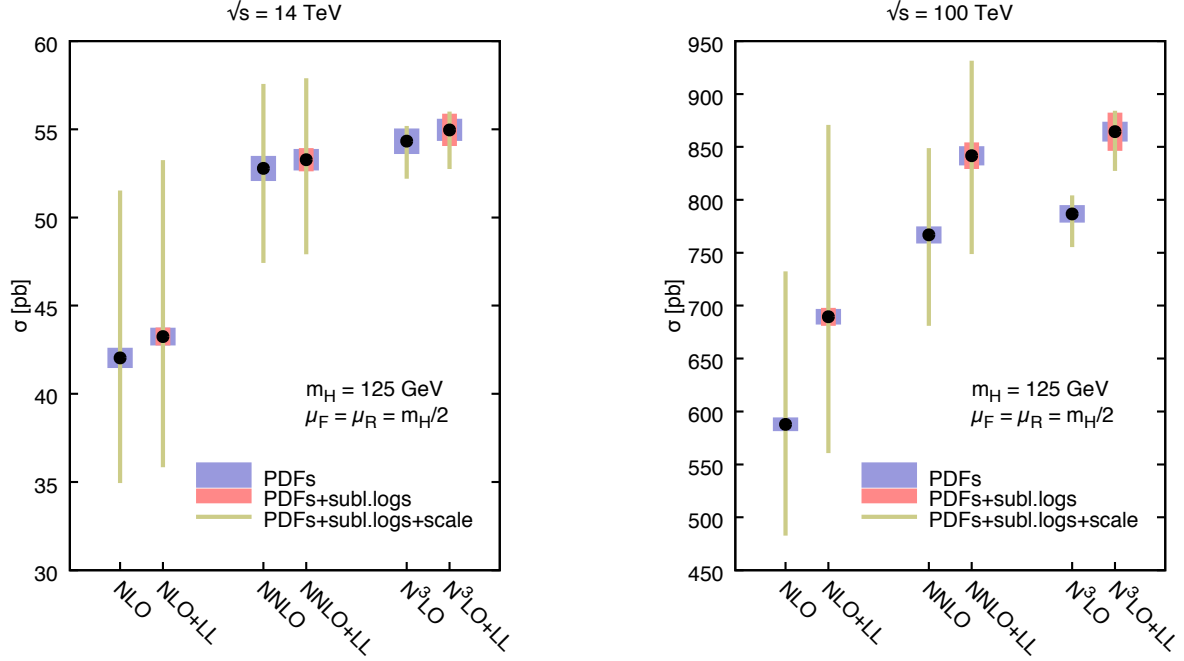


Figure 2.20: Perturbative progression of the Higgs cross section for two collider energies $\sqrt{s} = \{14, 100\}$ TeV. In each plot the NLO, NLO+LL, NNLO, NNLO+LL, $N^3\text{LO}$ and $N^3\text{LO}+\text{LL}$ results are shown. The results are supplemented by uncertainty bands from PDF, subleading logarithms and scale uncertainties. Figure taken from Ref. [230].

1796 deviations from standard linear evolution through higher twist effects or, eventually, non-linear
 1797 dynamics. Third, it allows checks of basic theory predictions such as the relation between
 1798 diffraction in ep scattering and nuclear shadowing [250]. Finally, the accurate extraction of
 1799 diffractive parton distribution functions facilitates tests of the range of validity of perturbative
 1800 factorisation [251–253]. The potential studies of inclusive diffraction that would be possible at
 1801 the LHeC are presented here (see Ref. [254] for further details). They substantially extend the
 1802 kinematic coverage of the HERA analyses, leading to much more detailed tests of theoretical
 1803 ideas than have been possible hitherto. Although we work here at NLO of QCD, it is worth
 1804 noting that similar analyses in the HERA context have recently extended to NNLO [255].

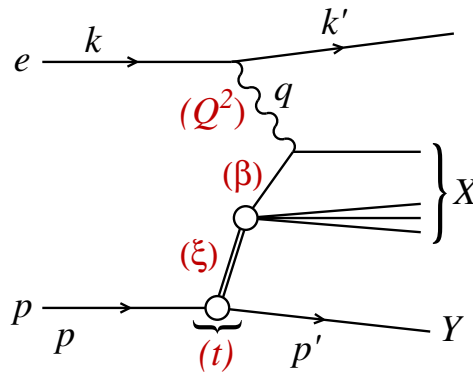


Figure 2.21: A diagram of a diffractive NC event in DIS together with the corresponding variables, in the one-photon exchange approximation. The large rapidity gap is between the system X and the scattered proton (or its low mass excitation) Y .

1805 In Fig. 2.21 we show a diagram depicting a neutral current diffractive deep inelastic event.
 1806 Charged currents could also be considered and were measured at HERA [256] but with large
 1807 statistical uncertainties and in a very restricted region of phase space. Although they could be
 1808 measured at both the LHeC and the FCC-eh with larger statistics and more extended kinematics,
 1809 in this first study we limit ourselves to neutral currents. The incoming electron or positron, with
 1810 four momentum k , scatters off the proton, with incoming four momentum p , and the interaction
 1811 proceeds through the exchange of a virtual photon with four-momentum q . The kinematic
 1812 variables for such an event include the standard deep inelastic variables

$$Q^2 = -q^2, \quad x = \frac{-q^2}{2p \cdot q}, \quad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k}, \quad (2.9)$$

1813 where Q^2 describes the photon virtuality, x is the Bjorken variable and y the inelasticity of the
 1814 process. In addition, the variables

$$s = (k + p)^2, \quad W^2 = (q + p)^2, \quad (2.10)$$

1815 are the electron-proton centre-of-mass energy squared and the photon-proton centre-of-mass
 1816 energy squared, respectively. A distinguishing feature of the diffractive event $ep \rightarrow eXY$ is the
 1817 presence of the large rapidity gap between the diffractive system, characterised by the invariant
 1818 mass M_X and the final proton (or its low-mass excitation) Y with four momentum p' . In
 1819 addition to the standard DIS variables listed above, diffractive events are also characterised by
 1820 an additional set of variables defined as

$$t = (p - p')^2, \quad \xi = \frac{Q^2 + M_X^2 - t}{Q^2 + W^2}, \quad \beta = \frac{Q^2}{Q^2 + M_X^2 - t}. \quad (2.11)$$

1821 In the above t is the squared four-momentum transfer at the proton vertex, ξ (alternatively
 1822 denoted by x_{IP}) can be interpreted as the momentum fraction of the *diffractive exchange* with
 1823 respect to the hadron, and β is the momentum fraction of the parton with respect to the
 1824 diffractive exchange. The two momentum fractions combine to give Bjorken- x , $x = \beta\xi$.

1825 The kinematic range in (β, Q^2, ξ) that we consider at the LHeC is restricted by the following
 1826 cuts:

- 1827 • $Q^2 \geq 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$: due to the fact that the initial distribution for the DGLAP evolution is
 1828 parameterised at $\mu_0^2 = 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$. The renormalization and factorisation scales are taken
 1829 to be equal to Q^2 .
- 1830 • $\xi < 0.4$: constrained by physical and experimental limitations. This rather high ξ value is
 1831 an experimental challenge and physically enters the phase-space region where the Pomeron
 1832 contribution should become negligible compared with sub-leading exchanges. Within the
 1833 two-component model, see Eq. (2.16) below, at high ξ the cross section is dominated by
 1834 the secondary Reggeon contribution, which is poorly fixed by the HERA data. We present
 1835 this high ξ (> 0.1) region for illustrative purpose and for the sake of discussion of the fit
 1836 results below.

1837 In Fig. 2.22 the accessible kinematic range in (x, Q^2) is shown for three machines: HERA, LHeC
 1838 and FCC-eh. For the LHeC design the range in x is increased by a factor ~ 20 over HERA
 1839 and the maximum available Q^2 by a factor ~ 100 . The FCC-eh machine would further increase
 1840 this range with respect to LHeC by roughly one order of magnitude in both x and Q^2 . We
 1841 also show the EIC kinematic region for comparison. The three different machines are clearly
 1842 complementary in their kinematic coverage, with LHeC and EIC adding sensitivity at lower and
 1843 higher x than HERA, respectively.

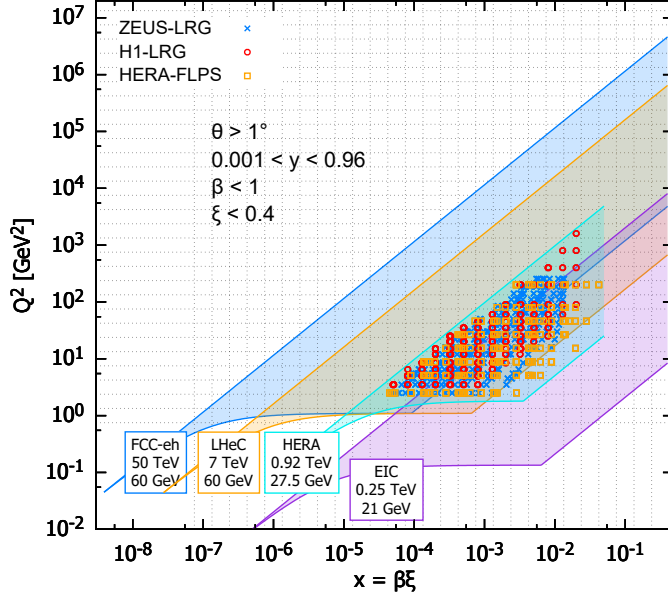


Figure 2.22: Kinematic phase space for inclusive diffraction in (x, Q^2) for the EIC (magenta region), the LHeC (orange region) and the FCC-eh (dark blue region) as compared with the HERA data (light blue region, ZEUS-LRG [257], H1-LRG [258], HERA-FLPS [259]). The acceptance limit for the electron in the detector design has been assumed to be 1° , and we take $\xi < 0.4$.

1844 In Fig. 2.23 the phase space in (β, Q^2) is shown for fixed ξ for the LHeC. The LHeC machine
 1845 probes very small values of ξ , reaching 10^{-4} with a wide range of β . Of course, the ranges in
 1846 β and ξ are correlated since $x = \beta\xi$. Therefore, for small values of ξ only large values of β are
 1847 accessible while for large ξ the range in β extends to very small values.

1848 Diffractive cross sections in the neutral current case can be presented in the form of the reduced
 1849 cross sections integrated over t [256]:

$$\frac{d^3\sigma^D}{d\xi d\beta dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha_{\text{em}}^2}{\beta Q^4} Y_+ \sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)}, \quad (2.12)$$

1850 where $Y_+ = 1 + (1-y)^2$ and the reduced cross sections can be expressed in terms of two diffractive
 1851 structure functions F_2^{D} and F_L^{D} . In the one-photon approximation, the relations are

$$\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)} = F_2^{\text{D}(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2) - \frac{y^2}{Y_+} F_L^{\text{D}(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2). \quad (2.13)$$

1852 In this analysis we neglect Z^0 exchange, though it should be included in future studies.

1853 Both $\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)}$ and $\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(4)}$ have been measured at the HERA collider [247, 248, 256–258, 260–263] and
 1854 used to obtain QCD-inspired parameterisations.

1855 The standard perturbative QCD approach to diffractive cross sections is based on collinear
 1856 factorisation [251–253]. It was demonstrated that, similarly to the inclusive DIS cross section,
 1857 the diffractive cross section can be written, up to terms of order $\mathcal{O}(\Lambda^2/Q^2)$, where Λ is the
 1858 hadronic scale, in a factorised form

$$d\sigma^{ep \rightarrow eXY}(\beta, \xi, Q^2, t) = \sum_i \int_\beta^1 dz d\hat{\sigma}^{ei} \left(\frac{\beta}{z}, Q^2 \right) f_i^{\text{D}}(z, \xi, Q^2, t), \quad (2.14)$$

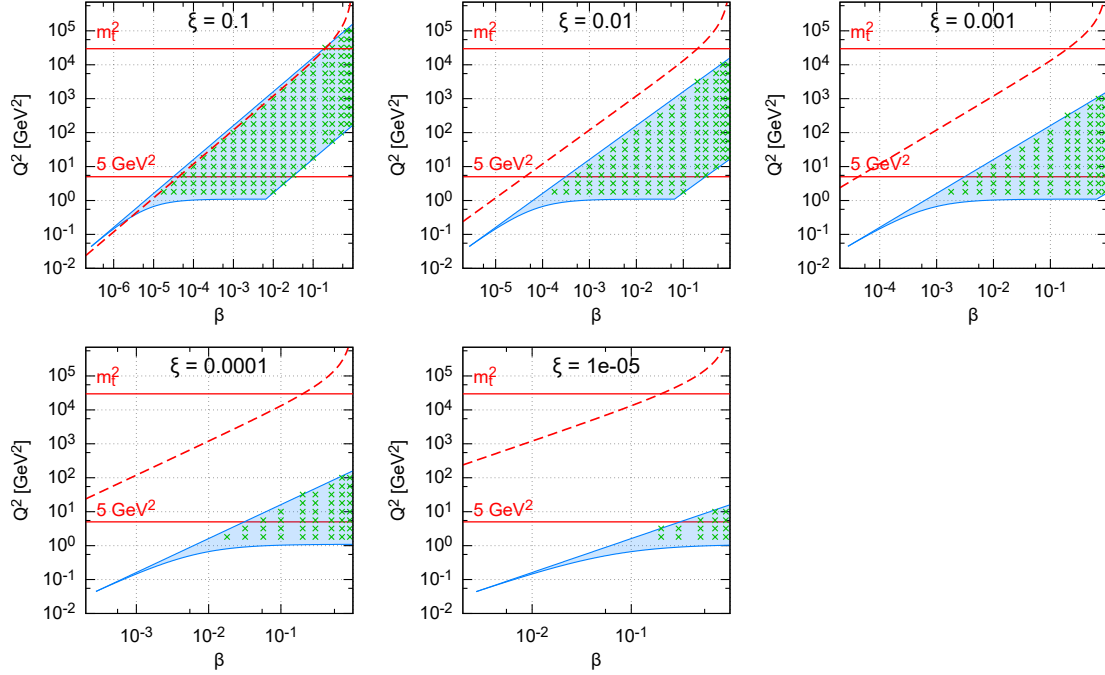


Figure 2.23: Kinematic phase space for inclusive diffraction in (β, Q^2) for fixed values of ξ for the LHeC design. The horizontal lines indicate correspondingly, $Q^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$, the lowest data value for the DGLAP fit performed in this study and m_t^2 the 6-flavour threshold. The dashed line marks the kinematic limit for $t\bar{t}$ production.

1859 where the sum is performed over all parton flavours (gluon, d -quark, u -quark, etc.). The hard
1860 scattering partonic cross section $d\hat{\sigma}^{ei}$ can be computed perturbatively in QCD and is the same
1861 as in the inclusive deep inelastic scattering case. The long distance part f_i^D corresponds to the
1862 diffractive parton distribution functions, which can be interpreted as conditional probabilities
1863 for partons in the proton, provided the proton is scattered into the final state system Y with
1864 specified 4-momentum p' . They are evolved using the DGLAP evolution equations [264–267]
1865 similarly to the inclusive case. The analogous formula for the t -integrated structure functions
1866 reads

$$F_{2/L}^{D(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2) = \sum_i \int_{\beta}^1 \frac{dz}{z} C_{2/L,i} \left(\frac{\beta}{z} \right) f_i^{D(3)}(z, \xi, Q^2), \quad (2.15)$$

1867 where the coefficient functions $C_{2/L,i}$ are the same as in inclusive DIS.

1868 Fits to the diffractive structure functions usually [256, 262] parameterise the diffractive PDFs in
1869 a two component model, which is a sum of two diffractive exchange contributions, P and R :

$$f_i^{D(4)}(z, \xi, Q^2, t) = f_{P}^p(\xi, t) f_i^P(z, Q^2) + f_{R}^p(\xi, t) f_i^R(z, Q^2). \quad (2.16)$$

1870 For both of these terms proton vertex factorisation is separately assumed, meaning that the
1871 diffractive exchange can be interpreted as colourless objects called a *Pomeron* or a *Reggeon*
1872 with parton distributions $f_i^{P,R}(\beta, Q^2)$. The flux factors $f_{P,R}^p(\xi, t)$ represent the probability
1873 that a Pomeron/Reggeon with given values ξ, t couples to the proton. They are parameterised
1874 using the form motivated by Regge theory,

$$f_{P,R}^p(\xi, t) = A_{P,R} \frac{e^{B_{P,R}t}}{\xi^{2\alpha_{P,R}(t)-1}}, \quad (2.17)$$

1875 with a linear trajectory $\alpha_{P,R}(t) = \alpha_{P,R}(0) + \alpha'_{P,R}t$. The diffractive PDFs relevant to the
 1876 t -integrated cross sections read

$$f_i^{D(3)}(z, \xi, Q^2) = \phi_{P,R}^P(\xi) f_i^P(z, Q^2) + \phi_{P,R}^R(\xi) f_i^R(z, Q^2), \quad (2.18)$$

1877 with

$$\phi_{P,R}^P(\xi) = \int dt f_{P,R}^P(\xi, t). \quad (2.19)$$

1878 Note that, the notions of *Pomeron* and *Reggeon* used here to model hard diffraction in DIS are,
 1879 in principle, different from those describing the soft hadron-hadron interactions; in particular,
 1880 the parameters of the fluxes may be different.

1881 The diffractive parton distributions of the Pomeron at the initial scale $\mu_0^2 = 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$ are
 1882 parameterised as

$$z f_i^P(z, \mu_0^2) = A_i z^{B_i} (1-z)^{C_i}, \quad (2.20)$$

1883 where i is a gluon or a light quark and the momentum fraction $z = \beta$ in the case of quarks. In the
 1884 diffractive parameterisations the contributions of all the light quarks (anti-quarks) are assumed
 1885 to be equal. For the treatment of heavy flavours, a variable flavour number scheme (VFNS)
 1886 is adopted, where the charm and bottom quark DPDFs are generated radiatively via DGLAP
 1887 evolution, and no intrinsic heavy quark distributions are assumed. The structure functions are
 1888 calculated in a General-Mass Variable Flavour Number scheme (GM-VFNS) [268, 269] which
 1889 ensures a smooth transition of $F_{2,L}$ across the flavour thresholds by including $\mathcal{O}(m_h^2/Q^2)$ correc-
 1890 tions. The parton distributions for the Reggeon component are taken from a parameterisation
 1891 which was obtained from fits to the pion structure function [270, 271].

1892 In Eq. (2.16) the normalisation factors of fluxes, $A_{P,R}$ and of DPDFs, A_i enter in the product.
 1893 To resolve the ambiguity we fix⁶ A_P and use $f_i^R(z, Q^2)$ normalised to the pion structure function,
 1894 which results in A_i and A_R being well defined free fit parameters. For full details, see Ref. [254].

1895 2.3.2 Pseudodata for diffractive structure functions

1896 The reduced cross sections are extrapolated using the ZEUS-SJ DPDFs. Following the scenario
 1897 of the ZEUS fit [262] we work within the VFNS scheme at NLO accuracy. The transition scales
 1898 for DGLAP evolution are fixed by the heavy quark masses, $\mu^2 = m_h^2$ and the structure functions
 1899 are calculated in the Thorne–Roberts GM-VFNS [272]. The Reggeon PDFs are taken from the
 1900 GRV pion set [271], the numerical parameters are taken from Tables 1 and 3 of Ref. [262], the
 1901 heavy quark masses are $m_c = 1.35 \text{ GeV}$, $m_b = 4.3 \text{ GeV}$, and $\alpha_s(M_Z^2) = 0.118$.

1902 The pseudodata were generated using the extrapolation of the fit to HERA data, which pro-
 1903 vides the central values, amended with a random Gaussian smearing with standard deviation
 1904 corresponding to the relative error δ . An uncorrelated 5% systematic error was assumed giving
 1905 a total uncertainty

$$\delta = \sqrt{\delta_{\text{sys}}^2 + \delta_{\text{stat}}^2}. \quad (2.21)$$

1906 The statistical error was computed assuming a very modest integrated luminosity of 2 fb^{-1} , see
 1907 Ref. [273, 274]. For the binning adopted in this study, the statistical uncertainties have a very
 1908 small effect on the uncertainties in the extracted DPDFs. Obviously, a much larger luminosity
 1909 would allow a denser binning that would result in smaller DPDF uncertainties.

⁶Here, as in the HERA fits, A_P is fixed by normalizing $\phi_P^P(0.003) = 1$.

1910 In Fig. 2.24 we show a subset of the simulated data for the diffractive reduced cross section $\xi\sigma_{\text{red}}$
 1911 as a function of β in selected bins of ξ and Q^2 for the LHeC. For the most part the errors are
 1912 very small, and are dominated by the systematics. The breaking of Regge factorisation evident
 1913 at large ξ comes from the large Reggeon contribution in that region, whose validity could be
 1914 further investigated at the LHeC.

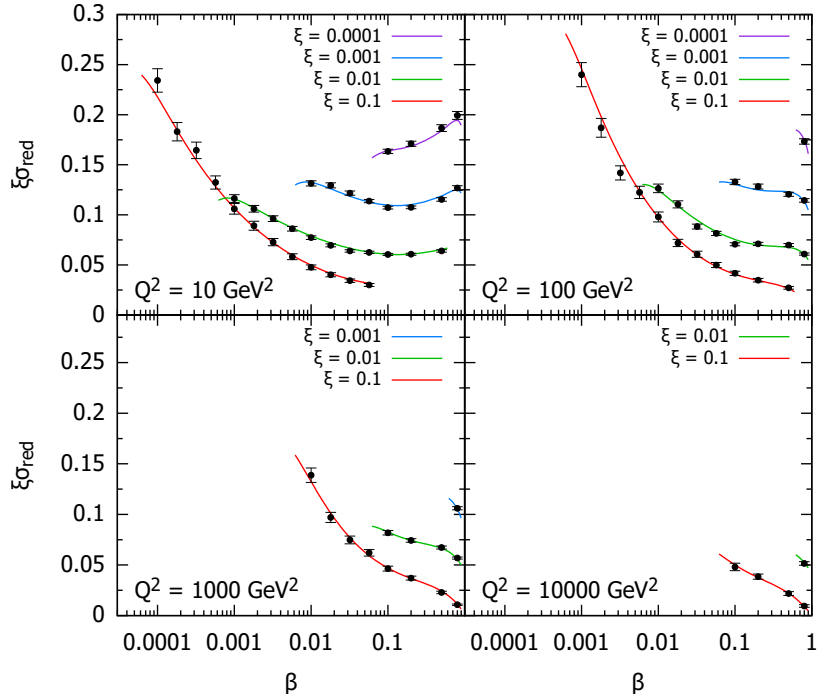


Figure 2.24: Selected subset of the simulated data for the diffractive reduced cross section as a function of β in bins of ξ and Q^2 for ep collisions at the LHeC. The curves for $\xi = 0.01, 0.001, 0.0001$ are shifted up by 0.04, 0.08, 0.12, respectively.

1915 2.3.3 Potential for constraining diffractive PDFs at the LHeC and FCC-eh

1916 With the aim of establishing the experimental precision with which DPDFs could be extracted
 1917 when LHeC data become available, we generate the central values of the pseudodata using the
 1918 central set of the ZEUS-SJ fit that are distributed according to a Gaussian with experimental
 1919 width given by Eq. (2.21), that also provides the uncertainty in the pseudodata. We then include
 1920 the pseudodata in a fit alongside the existing HERA data using the same functional form and,
 1921 as expected, obtain a $\chi^2/\text{ndf} \sim 1$, which demonstrates the consistency of the approach.

1922 To evaluate the experimental precision with which the DPDFs can be determined, several pseudo-
 1923 data sets, corresponding to independent random error samples, were generated. Each pseudo-
 1924 data set was fitted separately. The minimal value of Q^2 for the data considered in the fits was set
 1925 to $Q_{\text{min}}^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$. The reason for this cut-off is to show the feasibility of the fits including just
 1926 the range in which standard twist-2 DGLAP evolution is expected to be trustable. At HERA,
 1927 the Q_{min}^2 values giving acceptable DGLAP (twist-2) fits were 8 GeV^2 [256] and 5 GeV^2 [257] for
 1928 H1 and ZEUS, respectively. The maximum value of ξ was set by default to $\xi_{\text{max}} = 0.1$, above
 1929 which the cross section starts to be dominated by the Reggeon exchange. The binning adopted
 1930 in this study corresponds roughly to 4 bins per order of magnitude in each of ξ, β, Q^2 . For
 1931 $Q_{\text{min}}^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$, $\xi_{\text{max}} = 0.1$ and below the top threshold this results in 1229 and 1735 pseudo-

1932 data points for the LHeC and FCC-eh, respectively. The top-quark region adds 17 points for the
 1933 LHeC and 255 for FCC-eh. Lowering Q_{\min}^2 down to 1.8 GeV^2 we get 1589 and 2171 pseudodata
 1934 points, while increasing ξ up to 0.32 adds around 180 points for both proposed machines.

1935 The potential for determination of the gluon DPDF was investigated by fitting the inclusive
 1936 diffractive DIS pseudodata with two models with different numbers of parameters, named S and
 1937 C (see Ref. [254]) with $\alpha_{IP,IR}(0)$ fixed, in order to focus on the shape of the Pomeron's PDFs. At
 1938 HERA, both S and C fits provide equally good descriptions of the data with $\chi^2/\text{ndf} = 1.19$ and
 1939 1.18, respectively, despite different gluon DPDF shapes. The LHeC pseudodata are much more
 1940 sensitive to gluons, resulting in χ^2/ndf values of 1.05 and 1.4 for the S and C fits, respectively.
 1941 This motivates the use of the larger number of parameters in the fit-S model, which we employ
 1942 in the following studies. It also shows clearly the potential of the LHeC and the FCC-eh to
 1943 better constrain the low- x gluon and, therefore, unravel eventual departures from standard
 1944 linear evolution.

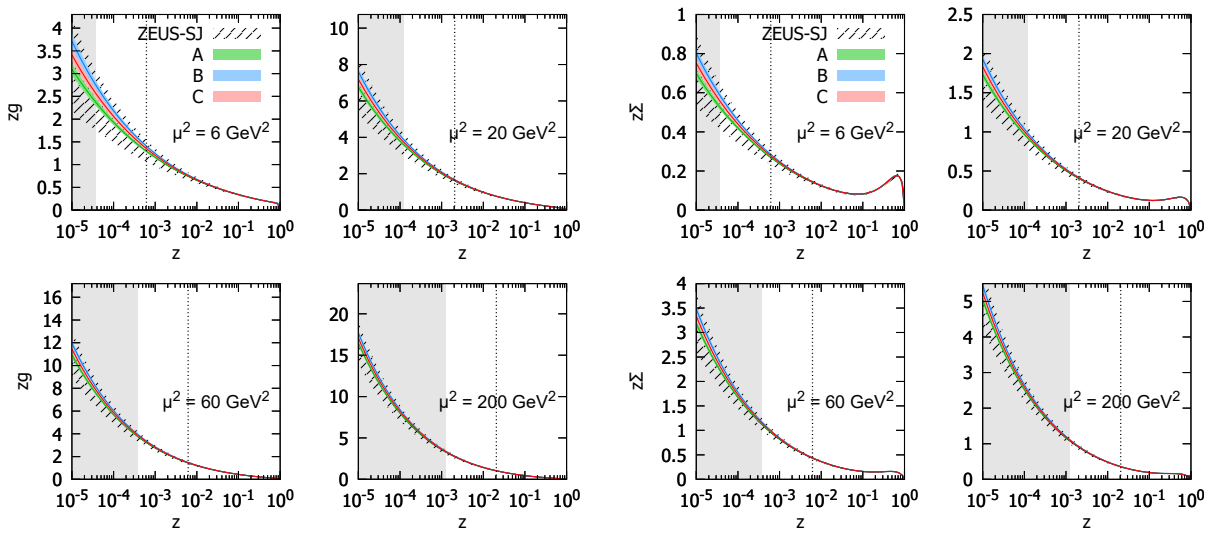


Figure 2.25: Diffractive PDFs for gluon and quark in the LHeC kinematics as a function of momentum fraction z for fixed values of scale μ^2 . Results of fits to three (A,B,C) pseudodata replicas are shown together with the experimental error bands. For comparison, the extrapolated ZEUS-SJ fit is also shown (black) with error bands marked with the hatched pattern. The vertical dotted lines indicate the HERA kinematic limit. The bands indicate only the experimental uncertainties.

1945 In Fig. 2.25 the diffractive gluon and quark distributions are shown for the LHeC and FCC-eh,
 1946 respectively, as a function of momentum fraction z for fixed scales $\mu^2 = 6, 20, 60, 200 \text{ GeV}^2$.
 1947 The bands labelled A, B, C denote fits to three statistically independent pseudodata replicas,
 1948 obtained from the same central values and statistical and systematic uncertainties. Hereafter the
 1949 uncertainty bands shown correspond to $\Delta\chi^2 = 2.7$ (90% CL). Also the extrapolated ZEUS-SJ
 1950 DPDFs are shown with error bands marked by the '/' hatched area. Note that the depicted
 1951 uncertainty bands come solely from experimental errors, neglecting theoretical sources, such as
 1952 fixed input parameters and parameterisation biases. The extrapolation beyond the reach of
 1953 LHeC/FCC-eh is marked in grey and the HERA kinematic limit is marked with the vertical
 1954 dotted line. The stability of the results with respect to the independent pseudodata replicas
 1955 used for the analysis is evident, so in the following only one will be employed. The low x DPDF
 1956 determination accuracy improves with respect to HERA by a factor of 5–7 for the LHeC and
 1957 10–15 for the FCC-eh and completely new kinematic regimes are accessed.

1958 For a better illustration of the precision, in Fig. 2.26 the relative uncertainties are shown for

1959 parton distributions at different scales. The different bands show the variation with the upper
 1960 cut on the available ξ range, from 0.01 to 0.32. In the best constrained region of $z \simeq 0.1$,
 1961 the precision reaches the 1% level. We observe only a modest improvement in the achievable
 1962 accuracy of the extracted DPDFs with the change of ξ by an order of magnitude from 0.01
 1963 to 0.1. An almost negligible effect is observed when further extending the ξ range up to 0.32.
 1964 This is encouraging, since the measurement for the very large values of ξ is challenging. It
 1965 reflects the dominance of the secondary Reggeon in this region. We stress again that only
 1966 experimental errors are included in our uncertainty bands. Neither theoretical uncertainties nor
 1967 the parameterisation biases are considered. For a detailed discussion of this and other aspects
 1968 of the fits, see Ref. [254].

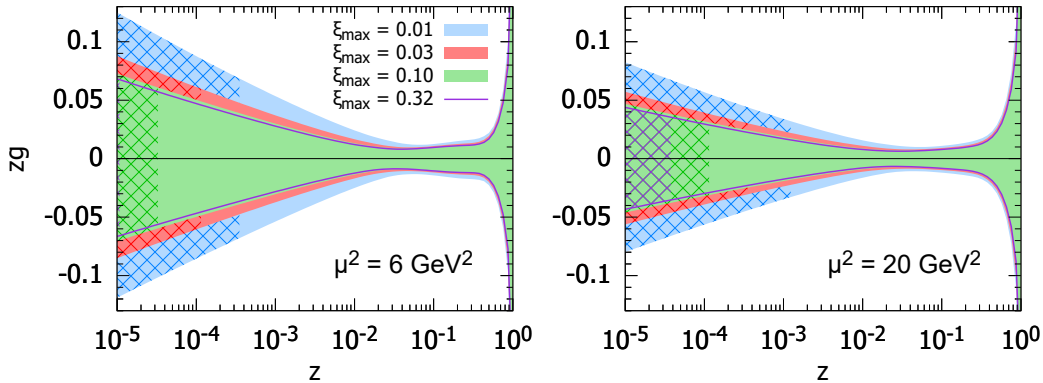


Figure 2.26: Relative uncertainties on the diffractive gluon PDFs for the LHeC kinematics. Two different choices of scales are considered $\mu^2 = 6$ and $\mu^2 = 20 \text{ GeV}^2$. The blue, red, green bands and magenta line correspond to different maximal values of $\xi = 0.01, 0.03, 0.1, 0.32$, respectively. The cross-hatched areas show kinematically excluded regions. The bands indicate only the experimental uncertainties, see the text.

1969 2.3.4 Factorisation tests using Hadronic Final States in Diffractive DIS

1970 The factorisation properties of diffractive DIS were a major topic of study at HERA [249] and
 1971 are highly relevant to the interpretation of diffractive processes at the LHC [275]. A general theo-
 1972 retical framework is provided by the proof [251] of a hard scattering collinear QCD factorisation
 1973 theorem for semi-inclusive DIS scattering processes such as $ep \rightarrow epX$. This implies that the
 1974 DPDFs extracted in fits to inclusive diffractive DIS may be used to predict perturbative cross
 1975 sections for hadronic final state observables such as heavy flavour or jet production. Testing this
 1976 factorisation pushes at the boundaries of applicability of perturbative QCD and will be a major
 1977 topic of study at the LHeC.

1978 Tests of diffractive factorisation at HERA are strongly limited by the kinematics. The mass of
 1979 the dissociation system X is limited to approximately $M_X < 30 \text{ GeV}$, which implies for example
 1980 that jet transverse momenta cannot be larger than about 15 GeV and more generally leaves very
 1981 little phase space for any studies at perturbative scales. As well as restricting the kinematic range
 1982 of studies, this restriction also implied large hadronisation and scale uncertainties in theoretical
 1983 predictions, which in turn limit the precision with which tests can be made.

1984 The higher centre-of-mass energy of the LHeC opens up a completely new regime for diffractive
 1985 hadronic final state observables in which masses and transverse momenta are larger and theo-
 1986 retical uncertainties are correspondingly reduced. For example, M_X values in excess of 250 GeV

1987 are accessible, whilst remaining in the region $\xi < 0.05$ where the leading diffractive (pomeron)
 1988 exchange dominates. The precision of tests is also improved by the development of techniques
 1989 for NNLO calculations for diffractive jets [276].

1990 Fig. 2.27 shows a simulation of the expected diffractive jet cross section at the LHeC, assuming
 1991 DPDFs extrapolated from H1 at HERA [256], using the NLOJET++ framework [277]. An
 1992 integrated luminosity of 100 fb^{-1} is assumed and the kinematic range considered is $Q^2 > 2 \text{ GeV}^2$,
 1993 $0.1 < y < 0.7$ and scattered electron angles larger than 1° . Jets are reconstructed using the k_T
 1994 algorithm with $R = 1$. The statistical precision remains excellent up to jet transverse momenta
 1995 of almost 50 GeV and the theoretical scale uncertainties (shaded bands) are substantially reduced
 1996 compared with HERA measurements. Comparing a measurement of this sort of quality with
 1997 predictions refined using DPDFs from inclusive LHeC data would clearly provide an exacting
 1998 test of diffractive factorisation.

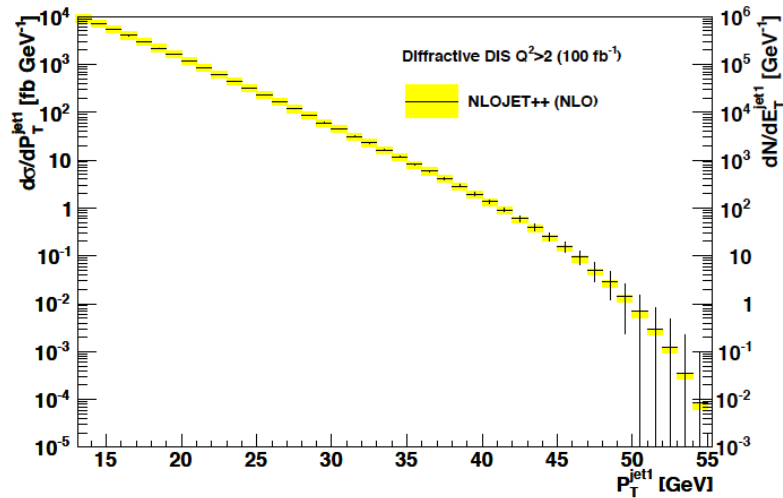


Figure 2.27: Simulated diffractive dijet cross section as a function of leading jet transverse momentum in the kinematic range $Q^2 > 2 \text{ GeV}^2$ and $0.1 < y < 0.7$, with scattered electron angles in excess of 1° . The error bars indicate predicted statistical uncertainties for a luminosity of 100 fb^{-1} . The coloured bands correspond to theoretical uncertainties when varying the renormalisation and factorisation scales by factors of 2.

1999 Further interesting hadronic final state observables that were studied at HERA and could be
 2000 extended at the LHeC include open charm production, thrust and other event shapes, charged
 2001 particle multiplicities and energy flows. In addition, the LHeC opens up completely new chan-
 2002 nels, notably diffractive beauty, W and Z production, the latter giving complementary sensitivity
 2003 to the quark densities to that offered by inclusive diffraction.

2004 2.4 Theoretical Developments

2005 2.4.1 Prospects for Higher Order pQCD in DIS

2006 TO BE WRITTEN

2007 **2.4.2 Theoretical Concepts on the Light Cone**

2008 **Intrinsic Heavy Quark Phenomena**

2009 One of the most interesting nonperturbative quantum field theoretic aspects of hadron light front
 2010 wavefunctions in QCD are the intrinsic heavy-quark Fock states [278–280]. Consider a heavy-
 2011 quark loop insertion to the proton’s self-energy. The heavy-quark loop can be attached by gluons
 2012 to just one valence quark. The cut of such diagrams yields the standard DGLAP gluon splitting
 2013 contribution to the proton’s heavy quark structure function. In this case, the heavy quarks are
 2014 produced at very small x . However, the heavy quark loop can also be attached to two or more
 2015 valence quarks in the proton self-energy. In the case of QED this corresponds to the light-
 2016 by-light lepton loop insertion in an atomic wavefunction. In the case of QCD, the heavy quark
 2017 loop can be attached by three gluons to two or three valence quarks in the proton self-energy.
 2018 This is a non-Abelian insertion to the hadron’s self-energy. The cut of such diagrams gives the
 2019 *intrinsic* heavy-quark contribution to the proton’s light-front wavefunction. In the case of QCD,
 2020 the probability for an intrinsic heavy $Q\bar{Q}$ pair scales as $\frac{1}{M_Q^2}$; this is in contrast to heavy $\ell\bar{\ell}$ lepton
 2021 pairs in QED where the probability for heavy lepton pairs in an atomic wavefunction scales as
 2022 $\frac{1}{M_\ell^4}$. This difference in heavy-particle scaling in mass distinguishes Abelian from non-Abelian
 2023 theories.

2024 A basic property of hadronic light-front wavefunctions is that they have strong fall-off with the
 2025 invariant mass of the Fock state. For example, the Light-Front Wave Functions (LFWFs) of the
 2026 colour-confining AdS/QCD models [281] $\mathcal{M}^2 = [\sum_i k_i^\mu]^2$ of the Fock state constituents. This
 2027 means that the probability is maximised when the constituents have equal true rapidity, i.e.
 2028 $x_i \propto (\vec{k}_{\perp i}^2 + m_i^2)^{1/2}$. Thus the heavy quarks carry most of the momentum in an intrinsic heavy
 2029 quark Fock state. For example, the charm quark in the intrinsic charm Fock state $|uudc\bar{c}\rangle$ of a
 2030 proton carries about 40% of the proton’s momentum: $x_c \sim 0.4$. After a high-energy collision,
 2031 the co-moving constituents can then recombine to form the final state hadrons. along the proton.
 2032 Thus, in a ep collision the comoving udc quarks from the $|uudc\bar{c}\rangle$ intrinsic 5-quark Fock state can
 2033 recombine to a Λ_c , where $x_{\Lambda_c} = x_c + x_u + x_d \sim 0.5$. Similarly, the comoving dcc in the $|uudc\bar{c}\bar{c}\bar{c}\rangle$
 2034 intrinsic 7-quark Fock state can recombine to a $\Xi(ccd)^+$, with $x_{\Xi(ccd)} = x_c + x_c + x_d \sim 0.9$.

2035 Therefore, in the intrinsic heavy quark model the wavefunction of a hadron in QCD can be rep-
 2036 resented as a superposition of Fock state fluctuations, e.g. $|n_V\rangle, |n_V g\rangle, |n_V Q\bar{Q}\rangle, \dots$ components
 2037 where $n_V \equiv dds$ for Σ^- , uud for proton, $\bar{u}d$ for π^- and $u\bar{d}$ for π^+ . Charm hadrons can be
 2038 produced by coalescence in the wavefunctions of the moving hadron. Doubly-charmed hadrons
 2039 require fluctuations such as $|n_V c\bar{c}c\bar{c}\rangle$. The probability for these Fock state fluctuations to come
 2040 on mass shell is inversely proportional to the square of the quark mass, $\mathcal{O}(m_Q^{-2n})$ where n
 2041 is the number of $Q\bar{Q}$ pairs in the hadron. Thus the natural domain for heavy hadrons pro-
 2042 duced from heavy quark Fock states is $\vec{k}_{\perp Q}^2 \sim m_Q^2$ and high light-front momentum fraction
 2043 x_Q [278, 279, 279, 280]. For example, the rapidity regime for double-charm hadron production
 2044 $y_{ccd} \sim 3$ at low energies is well within the kinematic experiment domain of a fixed target ex-
 2045 periment such as SELEX at the Tevatron [282]. Note that the intrinsic heavy-quark mechanism
 2046 can account for many previous observations of forward heavy hadron production single and
 2047 double J/ψ production by pions observed at high $x_F > 0.4$ in the low energy fixed target NA3
 2048 experiment, the high x_F production of $pp \rightarrow \Lambda_c + X$ and $pp \rightarrow \Lambda_b + X$ observed at the ISR;
 2049 single and double $\Upsilon(b\bar{b})$ production, as well as *quadra-bottom* tetraquark $[bb\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ production ob-
 2050 served recently by the AnDY experiment at RHIC [283]. In addition the EMC collaboration
 2051 observed that the charm quark distribution in the proton at $x = 0.42$ and $Q^2 = 75 \text{ GeV}^2$ is 30
 2052 times larger than expected from DGLAP evolution. All of these experimental observations are

2053 naturally explained by the intrinsic heavy quark mechanism. The SELEX observation [282] of
 2054 double charm baryons at high x_F reflects production from double intrinsic heavy quark Fock
 2055 states of the baryon projectile. Similarly, the high x_F domain – which would be accessible at
 2056 forward high x_F – is the natural production domain for heavy hadron production at the LHeC.

2057 The production of heavy hadrons based on intrinsic heavy quark Fock states is thus remarkable
 2058 efficient and greatly extends the kinematic domain of the LHeC, e.g. for processes such as
 2059 $\gamma^* b \rightarrow Z^0 b$. This is in contrast with the standard production cross sections based on gluon
 2060 splitting, where only a small fraction of the incident momentum is effective in creating heavy
 2061 hadrons.

2062 **Light-Front Holography and Superconformal Algebra**

2063 The LHeC has the potential of probing the high mass spectrum of QCD, such as the spec-
 2064 troscopy and structure of hadrons consisting of heavy quarks. Insights into this new domain of
 2065 hadron physics can now be derived by new non-perturbative colour-confining methods based on
 2066 light-front (LF) holography. A remarkable feature is universal Regge trajectories with universal
 2067 slopes in both the principal quantum number n and internal orbital angular momentum L . A
 2068 key feature is di-quark clustering and supersymmetric relations between the masses of meson,
 2069 baryons, and tetraquarks. In addition the running coupling is determined at all scales, includ-
 2070 ing the soft domain relevant to rescattering corrections to LHeC processes. The combination
 2071 of lightfront holography with superconformal algebra leads to the novel prediction that hadron
 2072 physics has supersymmetric properties in both spectroscopy and dynamics.

2074 A. Light-front holography and recent theoretical advances

2075
 2076 Five-dimensional AdS₅ space provides a geometrical representation of the conformal group.
 2077 Remarkably, AdS₅ is holographically dual to 3 + 1 spacetime at fixed LF time τ [284]. A
 2078 colour-confining LF equation for mesons of arbitrary spin J can be derived from the holographic
 2079 mapping of the *soft-wall model* modification of AdS₅ space for the specific dilaton profile $e^{+\kappa^2 z^2}$,
 2080 where z is the fifth dimension variable of the five-dimensional AdS₅ space. A holographic
 2081 dictionary maps the fifth dimension z to the LF radial variable ζ , with $\zeta^2 = b_{\perp}^2(1 - x)$. The
 2082 same physics transformation maps the AdS₅ and (3 + 1) LF expressions for electromagnetic and
 2083 gravitational form factors to each other [285].

2084 A key tool is the remarkable dAFF principle [286] which shows how a mass scale can appear in a
 2085 Hamiltonian and its equations of motion while retaining the conformal symmetry of the action.
 2086 When applying it to LF holography, a mass scale κ appears which determines universal Regge
 2087 slopes, and the hadron masses. The resulting *LF Schrödinger Equation* incorporates colour
 2088 confinement and other essential spectroscopic and dynamical features of hadron physics, includ-
 2089 ing Regge theory, the Veneziano formula [287], a massless pion for zero quark mass and linear
 2090 Regge trajectories with the universal slope in the radial quantum number n and the internal
 2091 orbital angular momentum L . The combination of LF dynamics, its holographic mapping to
 2092 AdS₅ space, and the dAFF procedure provides new insight into the physics underlying colour
 2093 confinement, the non-perturbative QCD coupling, and the QCD mass scale. The $q\bar{q}$ mesons and
 2094 their valence LFWFs are the eigensolutions of the frame-independent a relativistic bound-state
 2095 LF Schrödinger equation.

2096 The mesonic $q\bar{q}$ bound-state eigenvalues for massless quarks are $M^2(n, L, S) = 4\kappa^2(n + L + S/2)$.

2097 This equation predicts that the pion eigenstate $n = L = S = 0$ is massless for zero quark mass.
 2098 When quark masses are included in the LF kinetic energy $\sum_i \frac{k_{\perp i}^2 + m^2}{x_i}$, the spectroscopy of mesons
 2099 are predicted correctly, with equal slope in the principal quantum number n and the internal
 2100 orbital angular momentum L . A comprehensive review is given in Ref. [284].
 2101

2102 B. The QCD Running Coupling at all Scales from Light-Front Holography

2104 The QCD running coupling $\alpha_s(Q^2)$ sets the strength of the interactions of quarks and gluons
 2105 as a function of the momentum transfer Q (see Sec. 2.1). The dependence of the coupling Q^2
 2106 is needed to describe hadronic interactions at both long and short distances [288]. It can be
 2107 defined [289] at all momentum scales from a perturbatively calculable observable, such as the
 2108 coupling $\alpha_s^{g1}(Q^2)$, which is defined using the Bjorken sum rule [290], and determined from the
 2109 sum rule prediction at high Q^2 and, below, from its measurements [291–293]. At high Q^2 ,
 2110 such *effective charges* satisfy asymptotic freedom, obey the usual pQCD renormalisation group
 2111 equations, and can be related to each other without scale ambiguity by commensurate scale
 2112 relations [294].

2113 The high Q^2 dependence of $\alpha_s^{g1}(Q^2)$ is predicted by pQCD. In the small Q^2 domain its functional
 2114 behaviour can be predicted by the dilaton $e^{+\kappa^2 z^2}$ soft-wall modification of the AdS₅ metric,
 2115 together with LF holography [295], as $\alpha_s^{g1}(Q^2) = \pi e^{-Q^2/4\kappa^2}$. The parameter κ determines the
 2116 mass scale of hadrons and Regge slopes in the zero quark mass limit, and it was shown that it can
 2117 be connected to the mass scale Λ_s , which controls the evolution of the pQCD coupling [295–297].
 2118 Measurements of $\alpha_s^{g1}(Q^2)$ [298,299] are remarkably consistent with this predicted Gaussian form,
 2119 and a fit gives $\kappa = 0.513 \pm 0.007$ GeV, see Fig. 2.28.

2120 The matching of the high and low Q^2 regimes of $\alpha_s^{g1}(Q^2)$ determines a scale Q_0 , which sets the
 2121 interface between perturbative and non-perturbative hadron dynamics. This connection can be
 2122 done for any choice of renormalisation scheme and one obtains an effective QCD coupling at all
 2123 momenta. In the $\overline{\text{MS}}$ scheme one gets $Q_0 = 0.87 \pm 0.08$ GeV [300]. The corresponding value of
 2124 $\Lambda_{\overline{\text{MS}}}$ agrees well with the measured world average value and its value allows to compute hadron
 2125 masses using the AdS/QCD superconformal predictions for hadron spectroscopy. The value of
 2126 Q_0 can further be used to set the factorization scale for DGLAP evolution [265–267] or the ERBL
 2127 evolution of distribution amplitudes [301,302]. The use of the scale Q_0 to resolve the factorization
 2128 scale uncertainty in structure functions and fragmentation functions, in combination with the
 2129 scheme-independent *principle of maximum conformality* (PMC) [135] for setting renormalization
 2130 scales, can greatly improve the precision of pQCD predictions for collider phenomenology at
 2131 LHeC and HL-LHC.

2132 C: Superconformal Algebra and Hadron Physics with LHeC data

2134 If one generalises LF holography using *superconformal algebra* the resulting LF eigensolutions
 2135 yield a unified Regge spectroscopy of mesons, baryons and tetraquarks, including remark-
 2136 able supersymmetric relations between the masses of mesons and baryons of the same par-
 2137 ity ⁷ [303,304]. This generalisation further predicts hadron dynamics, including vector meson
 2138 electroproduction, hadronic LFWFs, distribution amplitudes, form factors, and valence structure
 2139 functions [305,306]. Applications to the deuteron elastic form factors and structure functions

⁷ QCD is not supersymmetrical in the usual sense, since the QCD Lagrangian is based on quark and gluonic fields, not squarks or gluinos. However, its hadronic eigensolutions conform to a representation of superconformal algebra, reflecting the underlying conformal symmetry of chiral QCD and its Pauli matrix representation.

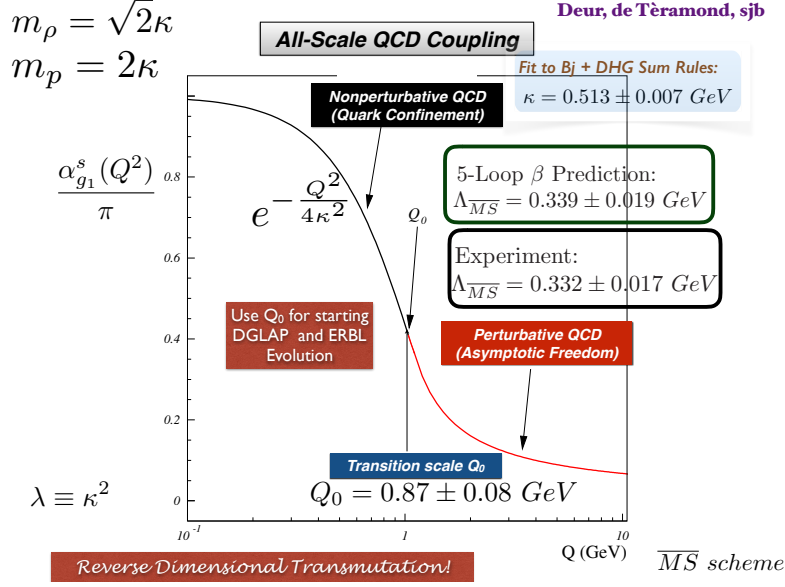


Figure 2.28: Prediction for the running coupling $\alpha_{g_1}^s(Q^2)$ at all scales. At lower Q^2 predictions are obtained from LF Holography and at higher Q^2 from perturbative QCD. The magnitude and derivative of the perturbative and non-perturbative coupling are matched at the scale Q_0 . This matching connects the perturbative scale $\Lambda_{\overline{MS}}$ to the non-perturbative scale κ which underlies the hadron mass scale.

2140 are given in Refs. [307, 308]

2141 The eigensolutions of superconformal algebra predict the Regge spectroscopy of mesons, baryons,
 2142 and tetraquarks of the same parity and twist as equal-mass members of the same 4-plet repre-
 2143 sentation with a universal Regge slope [309–311]. A comparison with experiment is shown in
 2144 Fig. 2.29. The $q\bar{q}$ mesons with orbital angular momentum $L_M = L_B + 1$ have the same mass as
 2145 their baryonic partners with orbital angular momentum L_B [309, 312].

2146 The predictions from LF holography and superconformal algebra can also be extended to mesons,
 2147 baryons, and tetraquarks with strange, charm and bottom quarks. Although conformal symme-
 2148 try is strongly broken by the heavy quark masses, the basic underlying supersymmetric mech-
 2149 anism, which transforms mesons to baryons (and baryons to tetraquarks), still holds and gives
 2150 remarkable mass degeneracy across the entire spectrum of light, heavy-light and double-heavy
 2151 hadrons.

2152 The 4-plet symmetry of quark-antiquark mesons, quark-diquark baryons, and diquark-antidiquark
 2153 tetraquarks are important predictions by superconformal algebra [300, 303]. Recently the AnDY
 2154 experiment at RHIC has reported the observation of a state at 18 GeV which can be identified
 2155 with the $[bb][\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ tetraquark [283]. The states with heavy quarks such as the $[bb][\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ tetraquark
 2156 can be produced at the LHeC, especially at high x_F along the proton beam direction. New
 2157 measurements at the LHeC are therefore inevitable to manifest the superconformal nature of
 2158 hadronic bound states.

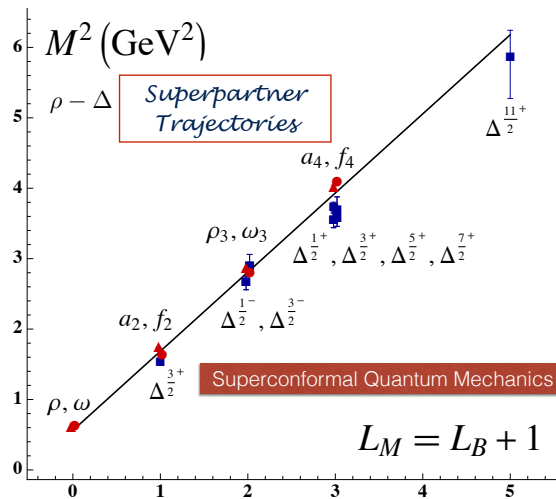


Figure 2.29: Comparison of the ρ/ω meson Regge trajectory with the $J = 3/2$ Δ baryon trajectory. Superconformal algebra predicts the mass degeneracy of the meson and baryon trajectories if one identifies a meson with internal orbital angular momentum L_M with its superpartner baryon with $L_M = L_B + 1$. See Refs. [309,312].

Chapter 3

Electroweak and Top Quark Physics

Preface to EW and Top.

3.1 Electroweak Physics with Inclusive DIS data

With the discovery of the Standard Model (SM) Higgs boson at the CERN LHC experiments and subsequent measurements of its properties, all fundamental parameters of the SM have now been measured directly and with remarkable precision. To further establish the validity of the theory of electroweak interactions [313–317], validate the mechanism of electroweak symmetry breaking and the nature of the Higgs sector [318–320], new electroweak measurements have to be performed at highest precision. Such high-precision measurements can be considered as a portal to new physics, since non-SM contributions, as for instance loop-insertions, may cause significant deviations for some precisely measurable and calculable observables. At the LHeC, the greatly enlarged kinematic reach to higher mass scales in comparison to HERA [321–323] and the large targeted luminosity will enable electroweak measurements in ep scattering with higher precision than ever before.

3.1.1 Electroweak effects in inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections

Electroweak NC interactions in inclusive $e^\pm p$ DIS are mediated by exchange of a virtual photon (γ) or a Z boson in the t -channel, while CC DIS is mediated exclusively by W -boson exchange as a purely *weak* process. Inclusive NC DIS cross sections are expressed in terms of generalised structure functions \tilde{F}_2^\pm , $x\tilde{F}_3^\pm$ and \tilde{F}_L^\pm at EW leading order (LO) as

$$\frac{d^2\sigma^{\text{NC}}(e^\pm p)}{dx dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha^2}{xQ^4} \left[Y_+ \tilde{F}_2^\pm(x, Q^2) \mp Y_- x\tilde{F}_3^\pm(x, Q^2) - y^2 \tilde{F}_L^\pm(x, Q^2) \right], \quad (3.1)$$

where α denotes the fine structure constant. The terms $Y_\pm = 1 \pm (1 - y)^2$, with $y = Q^2/sx$, describe the helicity dependence of the process. The generalised structure functions are separated into contributions from pure γ - and Z -exchange and their interference [95, 324]:

$$\tilde{F}_2^\pm = F_2 - (g_V^e \pm P_e g_A^e) \varkappa_Z F_2^{\gamma Z} + [(g_V^e g_V^e + g_A^e g_A^e) \pm 2P_e g_V^e g_A^e] \varkappa_Z^2 F_2^Z, \quad (3.2)$$

$$\tilde{F}_3^\pm = -(g_A^e \pm P_e g_V^e) \varkappa_Z F_3^{\gamma Z} + [2g_V^e g_A^e \pm P_e (g_V^e g_V^e + g_A^e g_A^e)] \varkappa_Z^2 F_3^Z. \quad (3.3)$$

Similar expressions hold for \tilde{F}_L . In the naive quark-parton model, which corresponds to the LO QCD approximation, the structure functions are calculated as

$$\left[F_2, F_2^{\gamma Z}, F_2^Z \right] = x \sum_q \left[Q_q^2, 2Q_q g_V^q, g_V^q g_V^q + g_A^q g_A^q \right] \{q + \bar{q}\}, \quad (3.4)$$

$$x \left[F_3^{\gamma Z}, F_3^Z \right] = x \sum_q \left[2Q_q g_A^q, 2g_V^q g_A^q \right] \{q - \bar{q}\}, \quad (3.5)$$

representing two independent combinations of the quark and anti-quark momentum distributions, xq and $x\bar{q}$. In Eq. (3.3), the quantities g_V^f and g_A^f stand for the vector and axial-vector couplings of a fermion ($f = e$ or $f = q$ for electron or quark) to the Z boson, and the coefficient \varkappa_Z accounts for the Z -boson propagator including the normalisation of the weak couplings. Both parameters are fully calculable from the electroweak theory. The (effective) coupling parameters depend on the electric charge, Q_f and the third component of the weak-isospin, $I_{L,f}^3$. Using $\sin^2\theta_W = 1 - \frac{M_W^2}{M_Z^2}$, one can write

$$g_V^f = \sqrt{\rho_{\text{NC},f}} \left(I_{L,f}^3 - 2Q_f \kappa_{\text{NC},f} \sin^2\theta_W \right), \quad \text{and} \quad (3.6)$$

$$g_A^f = \sqrt{\rho_{\text{NC},f}} I_{L,f}^3 \quad \text{with } f = (e, u, d). \quad (3.7)$$

2179 The parameters $\rho_{\text{NC},f}$ and $\kappa_{\text{NC},f}$ are calculated as real parts of complex form factors which
 2180 include the higher-order loop corrections [325–327]. They contain non-leading flavour-specific
 2181 components.

2182 Predictions for CC DIS are written in terms of the CC structure functions W_2 , xW_3 and W_L and
 2183 higher-order electroweak effects are collected in two form factors $\rho_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$ and $\rho_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$ [328, 329].

2184 In this study, the on-shell scheme is adopted for the calculation of higher-order corrections.
 2185 This means that the independent parameters are chosen as the fine structure constant α and
 2186 the masses of the weak bosons, the Higgs boson and the fermions. The weak mixing angle is
 2187 then fixed and G_F is a prediction, whose higher-order corrections are included in the well-known
 2188 correction factor Δr [330–332] (see discussion of further contributions in Ref. [95]).

2189 The predicted single-differential inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections for polarised e^-p scat-
 2190 tering as a function of Q^2 are displayed in Fig. 3.1. For NC DIS and at higher Q^2 , electroweak
 2191 effects are important through γZ interference and pure Z -exchange terms and the polarisation
 2192 of the LHeC electron beam of $P_e = \pm 0.8$ will considerably alter the cross sections. For CC DIS,
 2193 the cross section scales linearly with P_e . Two different electron beam energies are displayed in
 2194 Fig. 3.1, and albeit the impact of a reduction from $E_e = 60$ to 50 GeV appears to be small, a
 2195 larger electron beam energy would yield higher precision for the measurement of electroweak
 2196 parameters, since these are predominantly sensitive to the cross sections at highest scales, as
 2197 will be shown in the following.

2198 3.1.2 Methodology of a combined EW and QCD fit

2199 A complete electroweak analysis of DIS data has to consider PDFs together with electroweak
 2200 parameters [334]. In this study, the uncertainties of electroweak parameters are obtained in
 2201 a combined fit of electroweak parameters and the PDFs, and the inclusive NC and CC DIS
 2202 pseudodata (see Sec. 2.3.2) are explored as input data. The PDFs are parameterised with 13
 2203 parameters at a starting scale Q_0^2 and NNLO DGLAP evolution is applied [16, 17]. In this
 2204 way, uncertainties from the PDFs are taken into account, which is very reasonable, since the

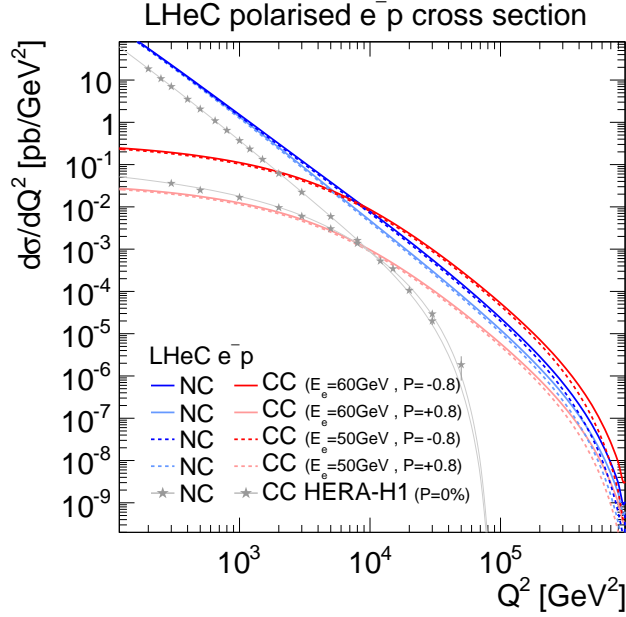


Figure 3.1: Single differential cross sections for polarised e^-p NC and CC DIS at LHeC for two different electron beam energies (E_e). Cross sections for longitudinal electron beam polarisations of $P_e = -0.8$ and $+0.8$ are displayed. For comparison also measurements at centre-of-mass energies of $\sqrt{s} = 920$ GeV by H1 at HERA for unpolarised ($P_e = 0\%$) electron beams are displayed [333].

2205 PDFs will predominantly be determined from those LHeC data in the future. The details
 2206 of the PDF fit are altogether fairly similar to the PDF fits outlined in Sec. ???. Noteworthy
 2207 differences are that additionally EW effects are included into the calculation by considering the
 2208 full set of 1-loop electroweak corrections [335], and the χ^2 quantity [107], which is input to the
 2209 minimisation and error propagation, is based on normal-distributed relative uncertainties. In
 2210 this way, a dependence on the actual size of the simulated cross sections is avoided. The size of
 2211 the pseudodata are therefore set equivalent to the predictions [336].

2212 3.1.3 Weak boson masses M_W and M_Z

The expected uncertainties for a determination of the weak boson masses, M_W and M_Z , are determined in the PDF+EW-fit, where one of the masses is determined together with the PDFs, while the other mass parameter is taken as external input. The expected uncertainties for M_W are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-60}) &= \pm 5_{(\text{exp})} \pm 8_{(\text{PDF})} \text{ MeV} = 10_{(\text{tot})} \text{ MeV} \quad \text{and} \\ \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-50}) &= \pm 8_{(\text{exp})} \pm 9_{(\text{PDF})} \text{ MeV} = 12_{(\text{tot})} \text{ MeV} \end{aligned} \quad (3.8)$$

for LHeC with $E_e = 60$ GeV or 50 GeV, respectively. The breakdown into experimental and PDF uncertainties is obtained by repeating the fit with PDF parameters fixed. These uncertainties are displayed in Fig. 3.2 and compared to the values obtained by LEP2 [338], Tevatron [337], ATLAS [339] and the PDG value [138]. The LHeC measurement will become the most precise measurement from one single experiment and will greatly improve over the best measurement achieved by H1, which was $M_W(\text{H1}) = 80.520 \pm 0.115$ GeV [323]. If the dominating uncorrelated

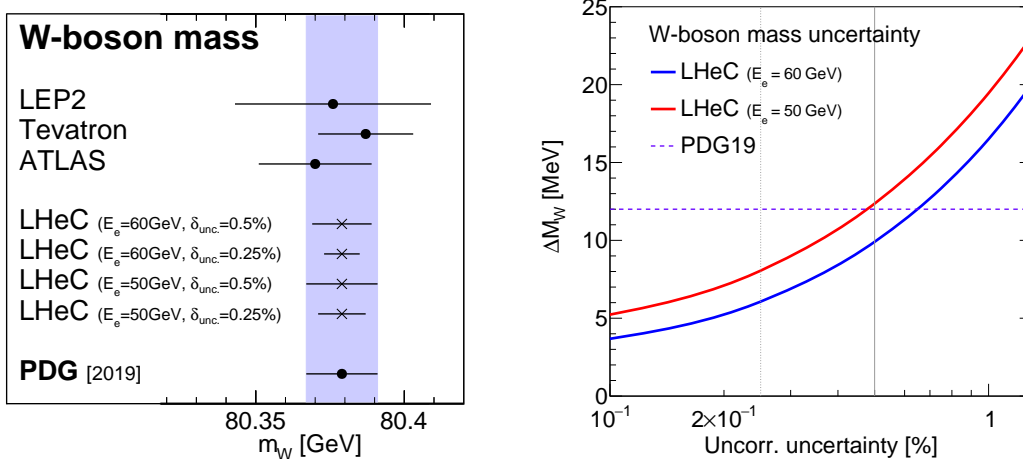


Figure 3.2: Left: Measurements of the W -boson mass assuming fixed values for the top-quark and Z -boson masses at the LHeC for different scenarios in comparison with today’s measurements [337–339] and the world average value (PDG19) [138]. For LHeC, prospects for $E_e = 60$ GeV and 50 GeV are displayed, as well as results for the two scenarios with 0.5 % or 0.25 % uncorrelated uncertainty (see text). Right: Comparison of the precision for M_W for different assumptions of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the pseudodata. The uncertainty of the world average value is displayed as horizontal line. The nominal (and alternative) size of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the inclusive NC/CC DIS pseudodata is indicated by the vertical line (see text).

uncertainties can be reduced from the prospected 0.5 % to 0.25 %¹, a precision for M_W of up to

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-60}) &= \pm 3_{(\text{exp})} \pm 5_{(\text{PDF})} \text{ MeV} = 6_{(\text{tot})} \text{ MeV} \quad \text{and} \\ \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-50}) &= \pm 6_{(\text{exp})} \pm 6_{(\text{PDF})} \text{ MeV} = 8_{(\text{tot})} \text{ MeV} \end{aligned} \quad (3.9)$$

for LHeC-60 and LHeC-50 may be achieved, respectively. A complete dependence of the expected total experimental uncertainty ΔM_W on the size of the uncorrelated uncertainty component is displayed in Fig. 3.2, and with a more optimistic scenario an uncertainty of up to $\Delta M_W \approx 5$ MeV can be achieved. In view of such a high accuracy, it will be important to study carefully theoretical uncertainties. For instance the parameteric uncertainty due to the dependence on the top-quark mass of 0.5 GeV will yield an additional error of $\Delta M_W = 2.5$ MeV. Also higher-order corrections, at least the dominating 2-loop corrections will have to be studied and kept under control. Then, the prospected determination of the W -boson mass from LHeC data will be among the most precise determinations and significantly improve the world average value of M_W . It will also become competitive with its prediction from global EW fits with present uncertainties of about $\Delta M_W = 7$ MeV [138, 340, 341].

While the determination of M_W from LHeC data is competitive with other measurements, the experimental uncertainties of a determination of M_Z are estimated to be about 11 MeV and 13 MeV for LHeC-60 and LHeC-50, respectively. Therefore, the precision of the determination of M_Z at LHeC cannot compete with the precise measurements at the Z -pole by LEP+SLD and future e^+e^- colliders may even improve on that.

A simultaneous determination of M_W and M_Z is displayed in Fig. 3.3 (left). Although the precision of these two mass parameters is only moderate, a meaningful test of the high-energy

¹Due to performance reasons, the pseudodata are generated for a rather coarse grid. With a binning which is closely related to the resolution of the LHeC detector, much finer grids in x and Q^2 are feasible. Already such a change would alter the uncertainties of the fit parameters. However, such an effect can be reflected by a changed uncorrelated uncertainty, and a value of 0.25 % appears like an optimistic, but achievable, alternative scenario.

2231 behaviour of electroweak theory is obtained by using G_F as additional input: The high precision
 2232 of the G_F measurement [342] yields a very shallow error ellipse and a precise test of the SM
 2233 can be performed with only NC and CC DIS cross sections alone. Such a fit determines and
 2234 simultaneously tests the high-energy behaviour of electroweak theory, while using only low-
 2235 energy parameters α and G_F as input (plus values for masses like M_t and M_H needed for loop
 corrections).

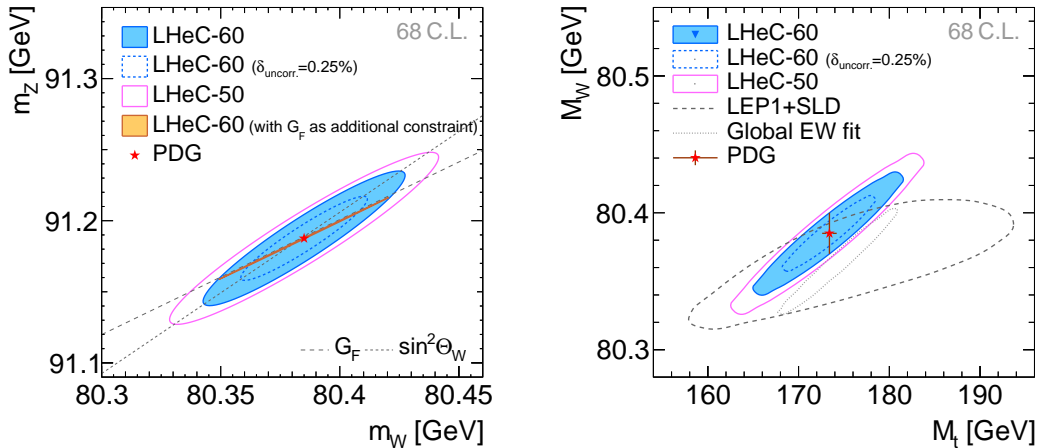


Figure 3.3: Simultaneous determination of the top-quark mass M_t and W -boson mass M_W from LHeC-60 or LHeC-50 data (left). Simultaneous determination of the W -boson and Z -boson masses from LHeC-60 or LHeC-50 data (right).

2236

2237 3.1.4 Further mass determinations

2238 Inclusive DIS data are sensitive to the top-quark mass M_t indirectly through radiative correc-
 2239 tions. M_t -dependent terms are dominantly due to corrections from the gauge boson self-energy
 2240 corrections. They are contained in the ρ and κ parameters and in the correction factor Δr .
 2241 The leading contributions are proportional to M_t^2 . This allows for an indirect determination
 2242 of the top-quark mass using LHeC inclusive DIS data, and a determination of M_t will yield an
 2243 uncertainty of $\Delta M_t = 1.8 \text{ GeV}$ to 2.2 GeV . Assuming an uncorrelated uncertainty of the DIS
 2244 data of 0.25% the uncertainty of M_t becomes as small as

$$\Delta M_t = 1.1 \text{ to } 1.4 \text{ GeV} \quad (3.10)$$

2245 for 60 and 50 GeV electron beams, respectively. This would represent a very precise indirect
 2246 determination of the top-quark mass from purely electroweak corrections and thus being fully
 2247 complementary to measurements based on real t -quark production, which often suffer from
 2248 sizeable QCD corrections. The precision achievable in this way will be competitive with indirect
 2249 determinations from global EW fits after the HL-LHC [343].

2250 More generally, and to some extent depending on the choice of the renormalisation scheme, the
 2251 leading self-energy corrections are proportional to $\frac{M_t^2}{M_W^2}$ and thus a simultaneous determination
 2252 of M_t and M_W is desirable. The prospects for a simultaneous determination of M_t and M_W is
 2253 displayed in Fig. 3.3 (right). It is remarkable that the precision of the LHeC is superior to that of
 2254 the LEP+SLD combination [344]. In an optimistic scenario an uncertainty similar to the global
 2255 electroweak fit [341] can be achieved. In a fit without PDF parameters similar uncertainties

2256 are found (not shown), which illustrates that the determination of EW parameters is to a large
 2257 extent independent of the QCD phenomenology and the PDFs.

2258 The subleading contributions to self-energy corrections have a Higgs-boson mass dependence
 2259 and are proportional to $\log \frac{M_H^2}{M_W^2}$. When fixing all other EW parameters the Higgs boson mass
 2260 could be constrained indirectly through these loop corrections with an experimental uncertainty
 2261 of $\Delta m_H = {}^{+29}_{-23}$ to ${}^{+24}_{-20}$ GeV for different LHeC scenarios, which is again similar to the indirect
 2262 constraints from a global electroweak fit [341], but not competitive with direct measurements.

2263 3.1.5 Weak Neutral Current Couplings

2264 The vector and axial-vector couplings of up-type and down-type quarks to the Z , g_V^q and g_A^q ,
 see Eq. (3.7), are determined in a fit of the four coupling parameters together with the PDFs.

| Coupling parameter | PDG value | Expected uncertainties | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|---|---------|
| | | LHeC-60 | LHeC-60 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}}=0.25\%$) | LHeC-50 |
| g_A^u | $0.50 {}^{+0.04}_{-0.05}$ | 0.0022 | 0.0015 | 0.0035 |
| g_A^d | $-0.514 {}^{+0.050}_{-0.029}$ | 0.0055 | 0.0034 | 0.0083 |
| g_V^u | 0.18 ± 0.05 | 0.0015 | 0.0010 | 0.0028 |
| g_V^d | $-0.35 {}^{+0.05}_{-0.06}$ | 0.0046 | 0.0027 | 0.0067 |

Table 3.1: Light-quark weak NC couplings ($g_A^u, g_A^d, g_V^u, g_V^d$) and their currently most precise values from the PDG [138] compared with the prospected uncertainties for different LHeC scenarios. The LHeC prospects are obtained in a simultaneous fit of the PDF parameters and all four coupling parameters determined at a time.

2265

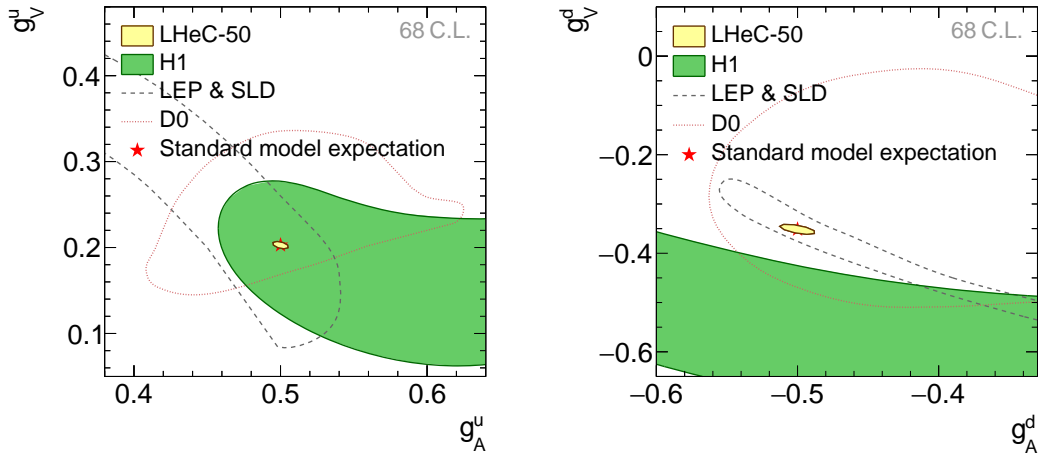


Figure 3.4: Weak NC vector and axial-vector couplings of u -type (left) and d -type quarks (right) at 68 % confidence level (C.L.) for simulated LHeC data with $E_e = 50$ GeV. The LHeC expectation is compared with results from the combined LEP+SLD experiments [344], a single measurement from D0 [345] and one from H1 [323]. The standard model expectations are displayed by a red star, partially hidden by the LHeC prospects.

2266 The resulting uncertainties are collected in Tab. 3.1. The two-dimensional uncertainty contours
 2267 at 68 % confidence level obtained from LHeC data with $E_e = 50$ GeV are displayed in Fig. 3.4
 2268 for the two quark families and compared with available measurements. While all the current

2269 determinations from e^+e^- , ep or $p\bar{p}$ data have a similar precision, the future LHeC data will
 2270 greatly improve the precision of the weak neutral-current couplings and expected uncertainties
 2271 are an order of magnitude smaller than the currently most precise ones [138]. An increased
 2272 electron beam energy of $E_e = 60$ GeV or improved experimental uncertainties would further
 2273 improve this measurement.

2274 The determination of the couplings of the electron to the Z boson, g_V^e and g_A^e , can be determined
 2275 at the LHeC with uncertainties of up to $\Delta g_V^e = 0.0013$ and $\Delta g_A^e = \pm 0.0009$, which is similar
 2276 to the results of a single LEP experiment and about a factor three larger than the LEP+SLD
 2277 combination [344].

2278 3.1.6 The neutral-current ρ_{NC} and κ_{NC} parameters

2279 Beyond Born approximation, the weak couplings are subject to higher-order loop corrections.
 2280 These corrections are commonly parameterised by quantities called ρ_{NC} , κ_{NC} and ρ_{CC} . They are
 2281 sensitive to contributions beyond the SM and the structure of the Higgs sector. It is important
 2282 to keep in mind that these effective coupling parameters depend on the momentum transfer
 2283 and are, indeed, form factors rather than constants. It is particularly interesting to investigate
 2284 the so-called effective weak mixing angle defined as $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff}} = \kappa_{\text{NC}} \sin^2 \theta_W$. At the Z -pole it
 2285 is well accessible through asymmetry measurements in e^+e^- collisions. In DIS at the LHeC,
 2286 the scale dependence of the effective weak mixing angle is not negligible. It can be determined
 2287 only together with the ρ parameter due to the Q^2 dependence and the presence of the photon
 2288 exchange terms. Therefore, we introduce (multiplicative) anomalous contributions to these
 2289 factors, denoted as $\rho'_{\text{NC,CC}}$ and κ'_{NC} , and test their agreement with unity (for more details see
 2290 Ref. [323]), and uncertainties of these parameters are obtained in a fit together with the PDFs.
 The two-dimensional uncertainty contours of the anomalous form factors $\rho'_{\text{NC},f}$ and $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ are

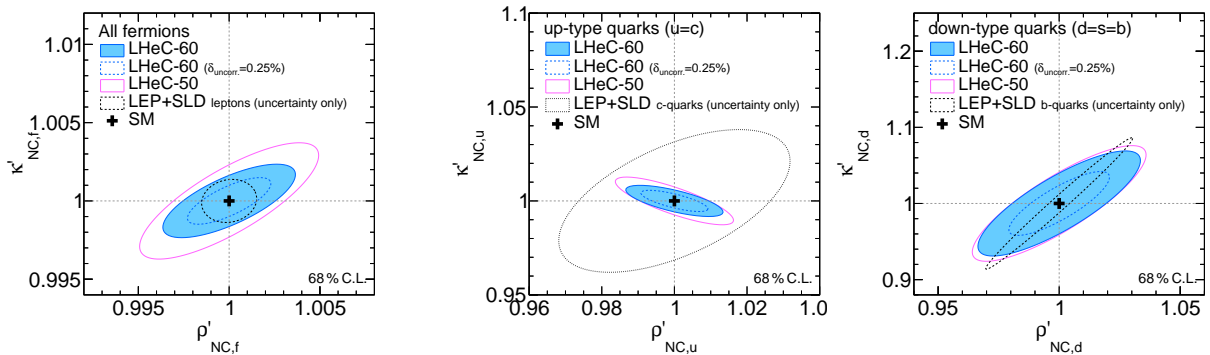


Figure 3.5: Expectations at 68 % confidence level for the determination of the ρ'_{NC} and κ'_{NC} parameters assuming a single anomalous factor equal for all fermions (left). The results for three different LHeC scenarios are compared with the achieved uncertainties from the LEP+SLD combination [344] for the determination the respective leptonic quantities. Right: uncertainties for the simultaneous determination of the anomalous form factors for u and d -type quarks, assuming known values for the electron parameters. The values are compared with uncertainties reported by LEP+SLD for the determination of the values $\rho_{\text{NC},(c,b)}$ and $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},(c,b)}$ for charm or bottom quarks, respectively.

2291 displayed for three different LHeC scenarios in Fig. 3.5 (left), and compared with uncertainties
 2292 from the LEP+SLD combination ² [344]. It is found that these parameters can be determined
 2293

²Since in the LEP+SLD analysis the values of ρ_{NC} and $\kappa_{\text{NC}} \sin^2 \theta_W$ are determined, we compare only the size of the uncertainties in these figures. Furthermore it shall be noted, that LEP is mainly sensitive to the

2294 with very high experimental precision.

2295 Assuming the couplings of the electron are given by the SM, the anomalous form factors for
 2296 the two quark families can be determined and results are displayed in Fig. 3.5 (right). Since
 2297 these measurements represent unique determinations of parameters sensitive to the light-quark
 2298 couplings, we can compare only with nowadays measurements of the parameters for heavy-quarks
 2299 of the same charge and it is found that the LHeC will provide high-precision determinations of
 2300 the $\rho'_{\text{NC},f}$ and κ'_{NC} parameters.

2301 A meaningful test of the SM can be performed by determining the effective coupling parameters
 2302 as a function of the momentum transfer. In case of κ'_{NC} , this is equivalent to measuring the
 2303 running of the effective weak mixing angle, $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$ (see also Sec. 3.1.7). However, DIS is quite
 2304 complementary to other measurements since the process is mediated by space-like momentum
 2305 transfer, i.e. $q^2 = -Q^2 < 0$ with q being the boson four-momentum. Prospects for a determi-
 2306 nation of ρ'_{NC} or κ'_{NC} at different Q^2 values are displayed in Fig. 3.6 and compared to results
 obtained by H1. The value of $\kappa'_{\text{NC}}(\mu)$ can be easily translated to a measurement of $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$.

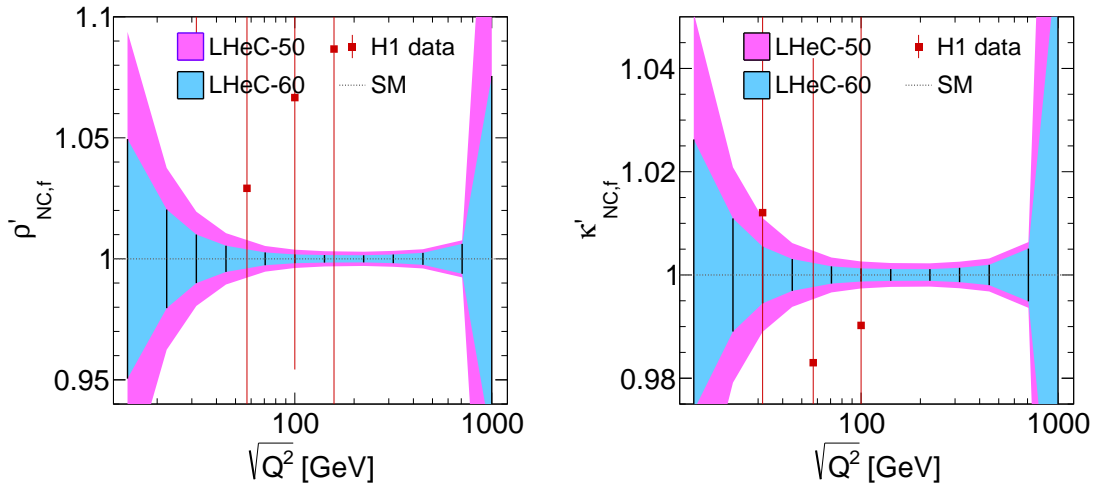


Figure 3.6: Test of the scale dependence of the anomalous ρ and κ parameters for two different LHeC scenarios. For the case of LHeC-60, i.e. $E_e = 60$ GeV, we assume an uncorrelated uncertainty of 0.25%. The uncertainties of the parameter $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ can be interpreted as sensitivity to the scale-dependence of the weak mixing angle, $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$.

2307

2308 From Fig. 3.6 one can conclude that this quantity can be determined with a precision of up to
 2309 0.1% and better than 1% over a wide kinematic range of about $25 < \sqrt{Q^2} < 700$ GeV.

2310 3.1.7 The effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}$

2311 The leptonic effective weak mixing angle is defined as $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(\mu^2) = \kappa_{\text{NC},\ell}(\mu^2) \sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}$. Due to
 2312 its high sensitivity to loop corrections it represents an ideal quantity for precision tests of the
 2313 Standard Model. Its value is scheme dependent and it exhibits a scale dependence. Near the
 2314 Z pole, $\mu^2 = M_Z^2$, its value was precisely measured at LEP and at SLD. Those analyses were
 2315 based on the measurement of asymmetries and their interpretation in terms of the leptonic weak
 2316 mixing angle was simplified by the fact that many non-leptonic corrections and contributions

parameters of leptons or heavy quarks, while LHeC data is more sensitive to light quarks (u,d,s), and thus the LHeC measurements are highly complementary.

2317 from box graphs cancel or can be taken into account by subtracting their SM predictions. The
 2318 highest sensitivity to $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z)$ to date arises from a measurement of $A_{\text{fb}}^{0,b}$ [344], where
 2319 the non-universal flavour-specific corrections to the quark couplings are taken from the SM
 2320 and consequently these measurements are interpreted to be sensitive only to the universal, i.e.
 2321 flavour-independent³, non-SM contributions to κ_{NC} . Applying this assumption also to the DIS
 2322 cross sections, the determination of $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ can directly be interpreted as a sensitivity study of
 2323 the leptonic effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$.

| Fit parameters | Parameter of interest | SM value | Expected uncertainties | | | |
|--|--|-------------|--|---------|--|---------|
| | | | LHeC-50 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}} = 0.50\%$) | LHeC-60 | LHeC-50 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}} = 0.25\%$) | LHeC-60 |
| $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$, PDFs | $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ | 0.23154 | 0.00033 | 0.00025 | 0.00022 | 0.00015 |
| $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}, \rho'_{\text{NC},f}$, PDFs | $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ | 0.23154 | 0.00071 | 0.00036 | 0.00056 | 0.00023 |
| $\kappa'_{\text{NC},e}$, PDFs | $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},e}(M_Z^2)$ | 0.23154 | 0.00059 | 0.00047 | 0.00038 | 0.00028 |
| $\kappa'_{\text{NC},e}, \kappa'_{\text{NC},u}, \kappa'_{\text{NC},d}$, PDFs | $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},e}(M_Z^2)$ | 0.23154 | 0.00111 | 0.00095 | 0.00069 | 0.00056 |
| $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ | $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ | 0.23154 | 0.00028 | 0.00023 | 0.00017 | 0.00014 |

Table 3.2: Determination of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ with inclusive DIS data at the LHeC for different scenarios. Since the value of the effective weak mixing angle at the Z pole cannot be determined directly in DIS, a fit of the $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ parameter is performed instead and its uncertainty is translated to $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$. Different assumptions on the fit parameters are studied, and results include uncertainties from the PDFs. Only the last line shows results where the PDF parameters are kept fixed. See text for more details.

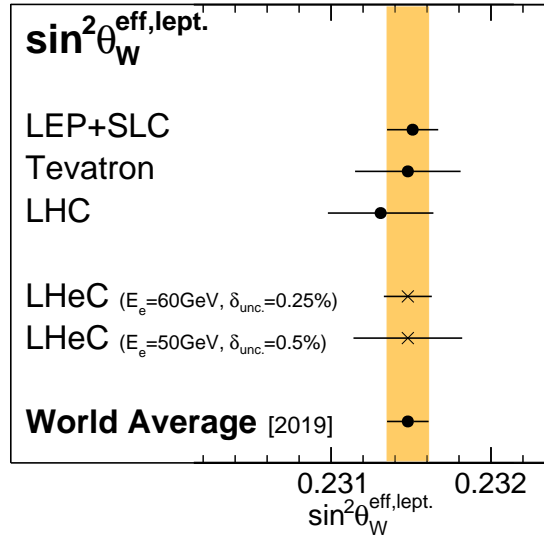


Figure 3.7: Comparison of the determination of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ from LHeC inclusive DIS data with recent averaged values. Results from LEP+SLC [344], Tevatron [346], LHC [347–350] and the world average value [350] are all obtained from a combination of various separate measurements (not shown individually) (see also Ref. [351] for additional discussions). For LHeC, the experimental and PDF uncertainties are displayed.

2324 The prospects for a determination of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$ are listed in Tab. 3.2. Two fits have been studied:
 2325 one with a fixed parameter ρ'_{NC} and one where $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$ is determined together with ρ'_{NC} (see

³Flavour-specific tests have been discussed to some extent in the previous Section.

2326 Fig. 3.5 (left)). At the LHeC, it will be possible to determine the value of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ with
 2327 an experimental uncertainty of up to

$$\Delta \sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell} = \pm 0.00015, \quad (3.11)$$

2328 where PDF uncertainties are already included. If the PDF parameters are artificially kept fixed,
 2329 the uncertainties are of very similar size, which demonstrates that these measurements are fairly
 2330 insensitive to the QCD effects and the PDFs. The uncertainties are compared ⁴ to recent average
 2331 values in Fig. 3.7. One can see that the LHeC measurement has the potential to become the
 2332 most precise single measurement in the future with a significant impact to the world average
 2333 value. It is obvious that a conclusive interpretation of experimental results with such a high
 2334 precision will require correspondingly precise theoretical predictions, and the investigation of
 2335 two-loop corrections for DIS will become important.

2336 This LHeC measurement will become competitive with measurements at the HL-LHC [142].
 2337 Since in pp collisions one of the dominant uncertainty is from the PDFs, future improvements
 2338 can (only) be achieved with a common analysis of LHeC and HL-LHC data. Such a study will
 2339 yield highest experimental precision and the challenging theoretical and experimental aspects for
 2340 a complete understanding of such an analysis will deepen our understanding of the electroweak
 2341 sector.

2342 It may be further of interest, to determine the value of the effective weak mixing angle of the
 2343 electron separately in order to compare with measurements in pp and test furthermore lepton-
 2344 specific contributions to $\kappa_{\text{NC,lept.}}$. Such fits are summarised in Table 3.2 and a reasonable
 2345 precision is achieved with LHeC.

2346 3.1.8 Electroweak effects in charged-current scattering

2347 The charged-current sector of the SM can be uniquely measured at high scales over many orders
 2348 of magnitude in Q^2 at the LHeC, due to the excellent tracking detectors, calorimetry, and high-
 2349 bandwidth triggers. Similarly as in the NC case, the form factors of the effective couplings of
 2350 the fermions to the W boson can be measured. In the SM formalism, only two of these form
 2351 factors are present, $\rho_{CC,eq}$ and $\rho_{CC,e\bar{q}}$. We thus introduce two anomalous modifications to them,
 2352 $\rho_{CC,(eq/e\bar{q})} \rightarrow \rho'_{CC,(eq/e\bar{q})} \rho_{CC,(eq/e\bar{q})}$ (see Ref. [323]). The prospects for the determination of these
 2353 parameters are displayed in Fig. 3.8, and it is found, that with the LHeC these parameters can
 2354 be determined with a precision up to 0.2–0.3%. Also their Q^2 dependence can be uniquely
 2355 studied with high precision up to $\sqrt{Q^2}$ values of about 400 GeV.

2356 3.1.9 Direct W and Z production and Anomalous Triple Gauge Couplings

2357 The direct production of single W and Z bosons as a crucial signal represents an important
 2358 channel for EW precision measurements. The production of W bosons has been measured at
 2359 $\sqrt{s} \simeq 320$ GeV at HERA [352–354]. With the full $e^\pm p$ data set collected by the H1 and ZEUS

⁴ It shall be noted, that in order to compare the LHeC measurements with the Z -pole measurements at $\mu^2 = M_Z^2$ in a conclusive way, one has to assume the validity of the SM framework. In particular the scale-dependence of $\kappa_{\text{NC},\ell}$ must be known in addition to the flavour-specific corrections. On the other hand, the scale dependence can be tested itself with the LHeC data which cover a large range of space-like Q^2 . In this aspect, DIS provides a unique opportunity for precision measurements in the space-like regime ($\mu^2 < 0$) as has been discussed in the previous Section, see Fig. 3.6 (right).

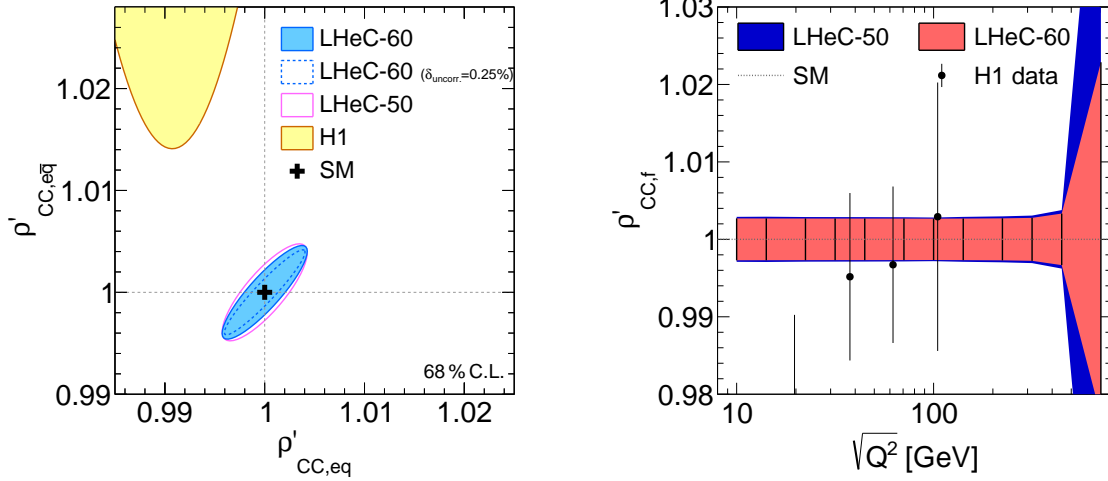


Figure 3.8: Left: anomalous modifications of the charged current form factors $\rho'_{CC,eq}$ and $\rho'_{CC,e\bar{q}}$ for different LHeC scenarios in comparison with the H1 measurement [323]. Right: scale dependent measurement of the anomalous modification of the charged current form factor $\rho'_{CC}(Q^2)$, assuming $\rho'_{CC,eq} = \rho'_{CC,e\bar{q}} = \rho'_{CC}$.

2360 experiments together, corresponding to an integrated luminosity of about $\mathcal{L} \sim 1 \text{ fb}^{-1}$, a few
 2361 dozens of W boson event candidates have been identified in the e , μ or τ decay channel.

2362 Detailed studies of direct W/Z production in ep collisions at higher centre-of-mass energies have
 2363 been presented in the past, see Refs. [355–357]. These theoretical studies were performed for
 2364 a proton beam energy of $E_p = 8 \text{ TeV}$ and electron beam energies of $E_e = 55 \text{ GeV}$ or 100 GeV ,
 2365 which correspond to a very similar centre-of-mass energy as the LHeC. Measurements at the
 2366 LHeC will benefit considerably from the large integrated luminosity, in comparison to earlier
 2367 projections.

2368 The W or Z direct production in e^-p collisions can be classified into five processes

$$\begin{aligned} e^-p &\rightarrow e^-W^+j, & e^-p &\rightarrow e^-W^-j, \\ e^-p &\rightarrow \nu_e^-W^-j, & e^-p &\rightarrow \nu_e^-Zj \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

2369 and

$$e^-p \rightarrow e^-Zj, \quad (3.13)$$

2370 where j denotes the hadronic the final state (i.e. the *forward jet*). According to the above
 2371 classification, the four processes in Eq.(3.12) can be used to study Tripe Gauge Couplings
 2372 (TGCs), e.g. $WW\gamma$ and WWZ couplings, since some contributing diagrams represent Vector
 2373 Boson Fusion (VBF) processes. The process shown in Eq.(3.13) does not contain any TGC
 2374 vertex. The processes for positron-proton collisions can be easily derived from Eqs. (3.12)
 2375 and (3.13), but are not discussed further here due to the small integrated luminosity of the
 2376 LHeC e^+p data.

2377 The MadGraph5_v2.4.2 program [358] is employed for matrix element calculation and event gener-
 2378 eration and the PDF NNPDF23_nlo_as_0119_qed [359] is used. Technical cuts on the transverse
 2379 momentum of the outgoing scattered lepton, p_T^ℓ , of 10 GeV or alternatively 5 GeV , are imposed
 2380 and other basic cuts are $p_T^j > 20 \text{ GeV}$, $|\eta_{e,j}| < 5$ and $\Delta R_{ej} < 0.4$. The resulting Standard Model
 2381 total cross sections of the above processes are listed in Tab. 3.3.

| Process | $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 10 \text{ GeV}$ | $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 10 \text{ GeV}$ | $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 5 \text{ GeV}$ |
|-----------------|---|---|--|
| $e^- W^+ j$ | 1.00 pb | 1.18 pb | 1.60 pb |
| $e^- W^- j$ | 0.930 pb | 1.11 pb | 1.41 pb |
| $\nu_e^- W^- j$ | 0.796 pb | 0.956 pb | 0.956 pb |
| $\nu_e^- Z j$ | 0.412 pb | 0.502 pb | 0.502 pb |
| $e^- Z j$ | 0.177 pb | 0.204 pb | 0.242 pb |

Table 3.3: The SM predictions of direct W and Z production cross sections in e^-p collisions for different collider beam energy options, E_e , and final state forward electron transverse momentum cut, p_T^e . Two different electron beam energy options are considered, $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$ and 60 GeV .

2382 The process with the largest production cross section in e^-p scattering is the single W^+ boson
2383 production. This will be the optimal channel of both the SM measurement and new physics
2384 probes in the EW sector. Also, this channel is experimentally preferred since the W^+ is produced
2385 in NC scattering, so the beam electron is measured in the detector, and the W -boson has opposite
2386 charge to the beam lepton and thus in a leptonic decay an opposite charge lepton and missing
2387 transverse momentum is observed. Altogether, it is expected that a few million of direct W -
2388 boson events are measured at LHeC.

2389 Several 10^5 direct Z events are measured, which corresponds approximately to the size of the
2390 event sample of the SLD experiment [344], but at the LHeC these Z bosons are predominantly
2391 produced in VBF events.

2392 All these total cross sections increase significantly with smaller transverse momentum of the
2393 outgoing scattered lepton. Therefore it will become important to decrease that threshold with
2394 dedicated electron taggers, see Chapter ??.

2395 The measurement of gauge boson production processes provides a precise measurement of the
2396 triple gauge boson vertex. The measurement is sensitive to new physics contributions in *anoma-*
2397 *lous* Tripe Gauge Couplings (aTGC). The LHeC has advantages of a higher centre-of-mass
2398 energy and easier kinematic analysis in the measurement of aTGCs.

2399 In the effective field theory language, aTGCs in the Lagrangian are generally parameterised as

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{TGC}/g_{WWV} &= ig_{1,V}(W_{\mu\nu}^+ W_\mu^- V_\nu - W_{\mu\nu}^- W_\mu^+ V_\nu) + i\kappa_V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- V_{\mu\nu} + \frac{i\lambda_V}{M_W^2} W_{\mu\nu}^+ W_{\nu\rho}^- V_{\rho\mu} \\
&+ g_5^V \epsilon_{\mu\nu\rho\sigma} (W_\mu^+ \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\rho W_\nu^-) V_\sigma - g_4^V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- (\partial_\mu V_\nu + \partial_\nu V_\mu) \\
&+ i\tilde{\kappa}_V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- \tilde{V}_{\mu\nu} + \frac{i\tilde{\lambda}_V}{M_W^2} W_{\lambda\mu}^+ W_{\mu\nu}^- \tilde{V}_{\nu\lambda},
\end{aligned} \tag{3.14}$$

2400 where $V = \gamma, Z$. The gauge couplings $g_{WW\gamma} = -e$, $g_{WWZ} = -e \cot \theta_W$ and the weak mixing
2401 angle θ_W are from the SM. $\tilde{V}_{\mu\nu}$ and $A \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu B$ are defined as $\tilde{V}_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{\mu\nu\rho\sigma} V_{\rho\sigma}$, $A \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu B = A(\partial_\mu B) -$
2402 $(\partial_\mu A)B$, respectively. There are five aTGCs ($g_{1,Z}$, κ_V , and λ_V) conserving the C and CP
2403 condition with electromagnetic gauge symmetry requires $g_{1,\gamma} = 1$. Only three of them are
2404 independent because $\lambda_Z = \lambda_\gamma$ and $\Delta\kappa_Z = \Delta g_{1,Z} - \tan^2 \theta_W \Delta\kappa_\gamma$ [360–362]. The LHeC can set
2405 future constraints on $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ and λ_γ .

2406 In the direct Z/γ production process, the anomalous WWZ and $WW\gamma$ couplings can be sep-
2407 arately measured without being influenced by their interference [363, 364]. In the direct W
2408 production process, both the deviation in signal cross section and the kinematic distributions

2409 can effectively constrain the $WW\gamma$ aTGC, while anomalous WWZ contribution in this channel
 2410 is insensitive as a result of the suppression from Z boson mass [365–367].

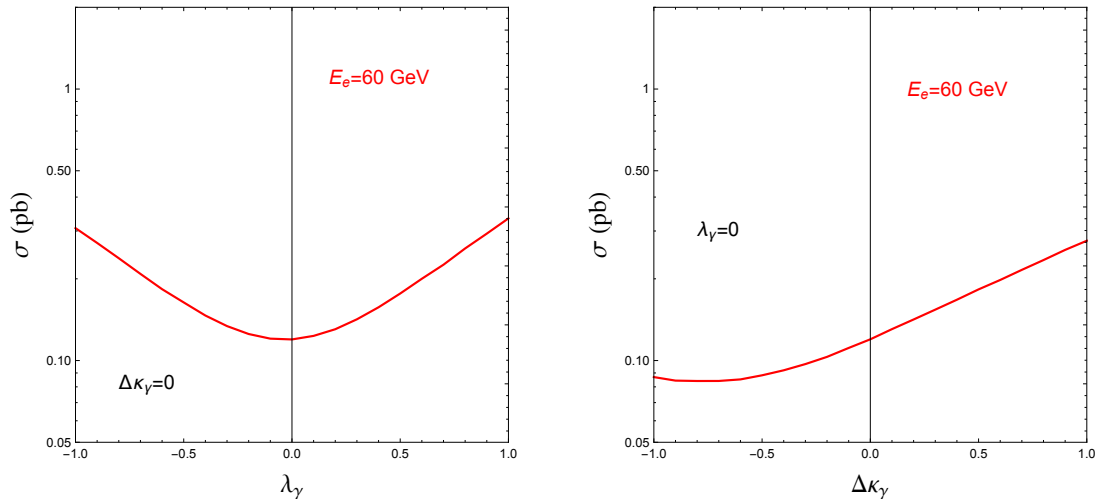


Figure 3.9: Total cross sections of the $e^-p \rightarrow e^- \mu^+ \nu_\mu j$ process with varying λ_γ (left plot) and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ (right plot).

2411 The W decay into muon channel is the expected optimal measurement for the anomalous $WW\gamma$
 2412 coupling because of the discrimination of final states and mistagging efficiencies [365]. Fig. 3.9
 2413 shows the cross section of single W^+ production process followed by $W^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ \nu_\mu$ decay, with
 2414 different λ_γ and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ values. Large anomalous coupling leads to measurable deviation to the
 2415 SM prediction. The cross section increases monotonically with $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ and the absolute value of
 2416 λ_γ within the region of $-1.0 \leq \lambda_\gamma/\Delta\kappa_\gamma \leq 1.0$.

2417 Kinematic analysis is necessary for the precise aTGC measurement. At LHeC, the $e^-p \rightarrow$
 2418 $e^-W^\pm j$ process with leptonic W boson decay can be fully reconstructed because the unde-
 2419 tected neutrino information is reconstructed either with energy-momentum conservation or the
 2420 recoil mass method. This allows to use angular correlation observables, which are sensitive to
 2421 the W boson polarization. Helicity amplitude calculation indicates that a non-SM value of λ_γ
 2422 leads to a significant enhancement in the transverse polarization fraction of the W boson in the
 2423 $e^-p \rightarrow e^-W^+j$ process, while a non-SM value of $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ leads to enhancement in the longitudinal
 2424 component fraction [355]. The angle $\theta_{\ell W}$ is defined as the angle between the decay product
 2425 lepton ℓ in the W rest frame and W moving direction in the collision rest frame. Making use
 2426 of the energetic final states in the forward direction, a second useful angle $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ is defined as
 2427 the separation of final state jet and electron on the azimuthal plane. In an optimised analysis,
 2428 assuming an integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , the observable $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ can impose stringent con-
 2429 straints on both λ_γ and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$, and uncertainties within $[-0.007, 0.0056]$ and $[-0.0043, 0.0054]$
 2430 are achieved, respectively. The $\cos\theta_{\mu W}$ observable is also sensitive to $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ at the same order,
 2431 but fails to constrain λ_γ . The analysis is described in detail in Ref. [365].

2432 Fig. 3.10 shows the two-parameter aTGC constraint on the λ_γ - $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ plane based on a χ^2 analysis
 2433 of $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ at parton-level and assuming an electron beam energy of $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$. When comparing
 2434 with the current LHC (blue and green) and LEP (red) bounds, the LHeC has the potential
 2435 to significantly improve the constraints, in particular on the $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ parameter. The polarised
 2436 electron beam is found to improve the aTGC measurement [364, 367]. In consideration of the
 2437 realistic analysis at detector level, one expects $2\text{-}3 \text{ ab}^{-1}$ integrated luminosity to achieve same
 2438 results [365].

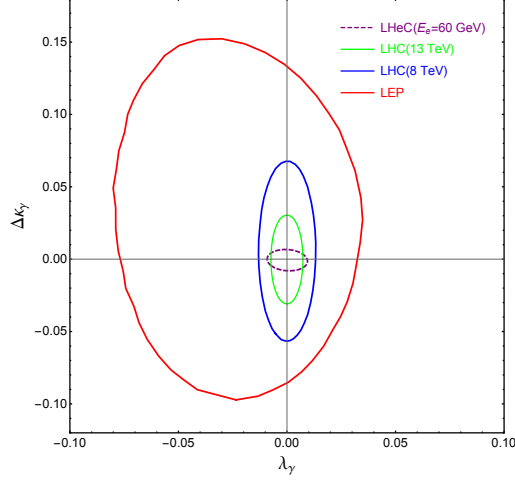


Figure 3.10: The 95% C.L. exclusion limit on the $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ - λ_γ plane. The purple dashed contour is the projected LHeC exclusion limit with 1 ab^{-1} integrated luminosity [365]. The blue, green and red contours are current bounds from LHC [368, 369] and LEP [370].

2439 One uncertainty in the aTGC measurement at the (HL-)LHC comes from the PDF uncertainty.
 2440 Future LHeC PDF measurement will improve the precision of aTGC measurement in the $x \simeq$
 2441 $\mathcal{O}(10^{-2})$ region.

2442 3.1.10 Radiation Amplitude Zero

2443 The LHeC is ideal for testing a novel feature of the Standard Model: the *radiation amplitude*
 2444 *zero* [371–374] of the amplitude $\gamma W^- \rightarrow c\bar{b}$ and related amplitudes, see Fig. 3.11. The Born
 2445 amplitude is predicted to vanish and change sign at $\cos\theta_{CM} = \frac{e_{\bar{b}}}{e_W} = -1/3$. This LHeC mea-
 2446 surement tests W compositeness and its zero anomalous magnetic moment at leading order:
 2447 $g_W = 2, \kappa_W = 1$, as well as $g_q = 2$ for quarks.. One can also test the radiation amplitude zero
 for the top quark from $\gamma b \rightarrow W^- t$.

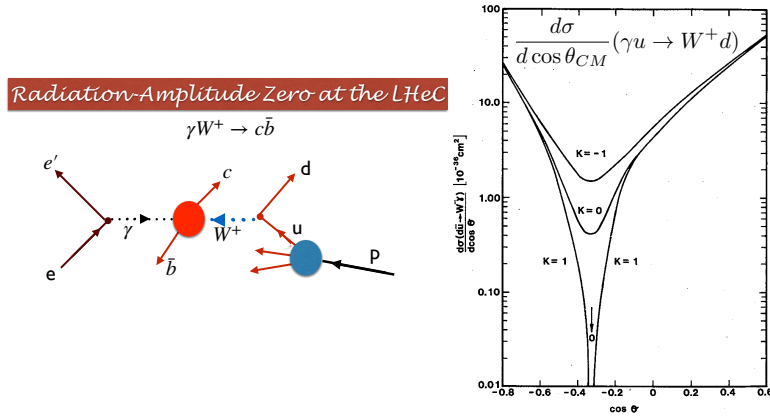


Figure 3.11: The radiation amplitude zero of the Standard Model in $\gamma W^+ \rightarrow c\bar{b}$ and $\gamma u \rightarrow W^+ d$. The prediction for the angular distribution $\frac{d\sigma}{d\cos(\theta_{CM})}(\gamma u \rightarrow W^+ d)$ is from Ref. [374].

2448

2449 **3.1.11 Conclusion**

2450 With LHeC inclusive NC and CC DIS data, unique measurements of electroweak parameters can
 2451 be performed with highest precision. Since inclusive DIS is mediated through space-like momen-
 2452 tum transfer (t -channel exchange) the results are often complementary to other experiments,
 2453 such as pp or e^+e^- collider experiments, where measurements are performed in the time-like
 2454 regime and most often at the Z peak. Among many other quantities, measurements of the weak
 2455 couplings of the light quarks, u and d , or their anomalous form factors $\rho'_{\text{NC},u/d}$ and $\kappa'_{\text{NC},u/d}$,
 2456 can be performed uniquely due to the important contributions of valence quarks in the initial
 2457 state. Also scale dependent measurements of weak interactions can be performed over a large
 2458 range in $\sqrt{Q^2}$, which provides an interesting portal to BSM physics. The W boson mass can be
 2459 determined with very small experimental uncertainties, such that theoretical uncertainties are
 2460 expected to become more important than experimental uncertainties. While the parameters of
 2461 the PDFs are determined together with the EW parameters in the present study, it is found
 2462 that the PDFs do not induce a limitation of the uncertainties. Considering the dominating
 2463 top-quark mass dependence of higher-order electroweak effects, one can realise that the LHeC
 2464 will be competitive with the global electroweak fit after the HL-LHC era [142, 343].

2465 Besides proving its own remarkable prospect on high-precision electroweak physics, the LHeC
 2466 will further significantly improve the electroweak measurements in pp collisions at the LHC by
 2467 reducing the presently sizeable influence of PDF and α_s uncertainties. This is discussed in
 2468 Sec. ??.

2469 **3.2 Top Quark Physics**

2470 SM top quark production at a future ep collider is dominated by single top quark production,
 2471 mainly via CC DIS production. An example graph is shown in Fig. 3.12 (left). The total cross
 2472 section is 1.89 pb at the LHeC [375] and with an electron beam energy of 60 GeV, and an LHC
 2473 proton beam of 7 TeV, leading to a centre-of-mass energy of 1.3 TeV, respectively. The other
 2474 important top quark production mode is $t\bar{t}$ photoproduction with a total cross section of 0.05 pb
 2475 at the LHeC [376]. An example graph is shown in Fig. 3.12 (right). This makes a future LHeC a
 2476 top quark factory and an ideal tool to study top quarks with a high precision, and to analyse in
 2477 particular their electroweak interaction. Selected highlights in top quark physics are summarised
 2478 here.

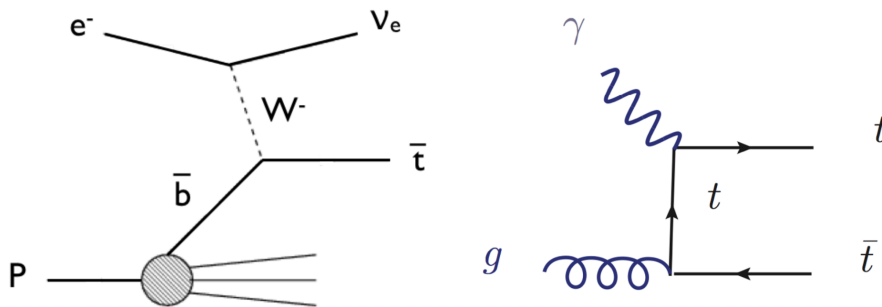


Figure 3.12: Example graphs for CC DIS top quark production (left) and top quark photoproduction (right).

2479 **3.2.1 Wtq Couplings**

2480 One flagship measurement is the direct measurement of the CKM matrix element $|V_{tb}|$, i.e.
 2481 without making any model assumptions such as on the unitarity of the CKM matrix or the
 2482 number of quark generations. An elaborate analysis of the single top quark CC DIS process
 2483 at the LHeC including a detailed detector simulation using the DELPHES package [377] shows
 2484 that already at 100fb^{-1} of integrated luminosity an uncertainty of 1% can be expected. This
 2485 compares to a total uncertainty of 4.1% of the currently most accurate result at the LHC Run-I
 2486 performed by the CMS experiment [378].

2487 The same analysis [375] can also be used to search for anomalous left- and right-handed Wtb
 2488 vector (f_1^L, f_1^R) and tensor (f_2^L, f_2^R) couplings analyzing the following effective Lagrangian:

$$L = -\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}\bar{b}\gamma^\mu V_{tb}(f_1^L P_L - f_1^R P_R)tW_\mu^- - \frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}\bar{b}\frac{i\sigma^{\mu\nu}q_\nu}{M_W}(f_2^L P_L - f_2^R P_R)tW_\mu^- + h.c. \quad (3.15)$$

2489 In the SM $f_1^L = 1$ and $f_1^R = f_2^L = f_2^R = 0$. The effect of anomalous Wtb couplings is consistently
 2490 evaluated in the production and the decay of the antitop quark, cf. Fig. 3.12 (left). Using
 2491 hadronic top quark decays only, the expected accuracies in a measurement of these couplings
 2492 as a function of the integrated luminosity are presented in Fig. 3.13 (upper left), derived from
 2493 expected 95% C.L. limits on the cross section yields. The couplings can be measured with
 2494 accuracies of 1% for the SM f_1^L coupling determining $|V_{tb}|$ (as discussed above) and of 4% for
 2495 f_2^L , 9% for f_2^R , and 14% for f_1^R at 1ab^{-1} .

2496 Similarly, the CKM matrix elements $|V_{tx}|$ ($x = d, s$) can be extracted using a parameterisation of
 2497 deviations from their SM values with very high precision through W boson and bottom (light)
 2498 quark associated production channels, where the W boson and b -jet (light jet $j = d, s$) final
 2499 states can be produced via s-channel single top quark decay or t-channel top quark exchange as
 2500 outlined in [379]. As an example, analysing the processes

2501 Signal 1: $pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e W^- \bar{b} \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell \bar{b}$

2502 Signal 2: $pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e W^- b \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell b$

2503 Signal 3: $pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e W^- j \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell j$

2504 in an elaborate analysis including a detailed detector simulation using the DELPHES pack-
 2505 age [377], the expected accuracies on $|V_{td}|$ and $|V_{ts}|$ at the 2σ confidence level (C.L.) are shown
 2506 as a function of the integrated luminosity in Fig. 3.13 (upper right, middle left). At 1ab^{-1} of
 2507 integrated luminosity and an electron polarization of 80%, the 2σ limits improve on existing
 2508 limits from the LHC [380] (interpreted by [381]) by a factor of ≈ 3.5 . Analyzing Signal 3 alone,
 2509 and even more when combining Signals 1, 2 and 3, will allow for the first time to achieve an ac-
 2510 curacy of the order of the actual SM value of $|V_{ts}^{\text{SM}}| = 0.04108_{-0.0057}^{+0.0030}$ as derived from an indirect
 2511 global CKM matrix fit [382], and will therefore represent a direct high precision measurement
 2512 of this important top quark property. In these studies, upper limits at the 2σ level down to
 2513 $|V_{ts}| < 0.06$, and $|V_{td}| < 0.06$ can be achieved.

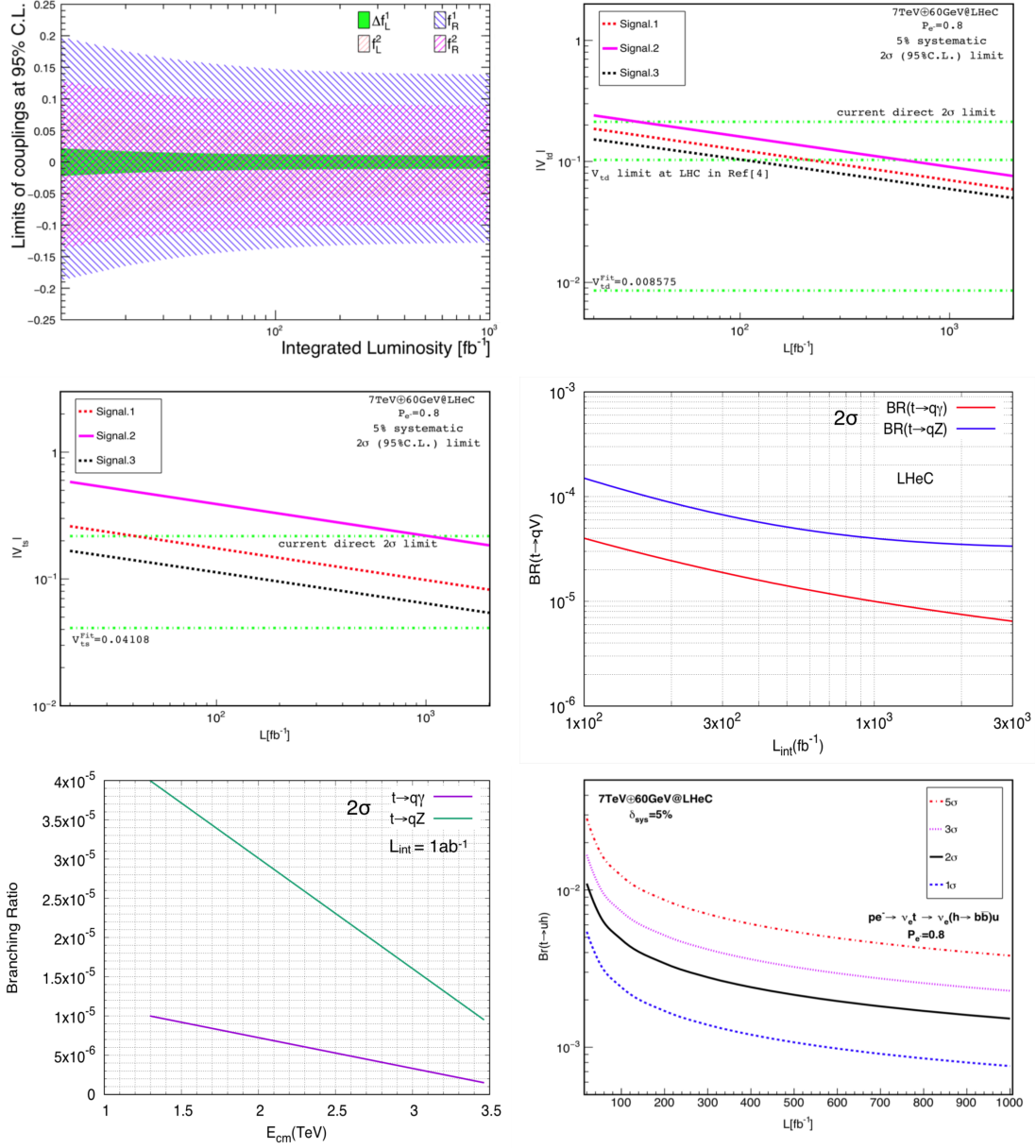


Figure 3.13: Expected sensitivities as a function of the integrated luminosity on the SM and anomalous Wtb couplings [375] (upper left), on $|V_{td}|$ (upper right) and $|V_{ts}|$ (middle left) [379], on FCNC $t \rightarrow qV$ branching ratios (middle right) [383, 384], and on FCNC $t \rightarrow uH$ branching ratios [385] (lower left). The expected upper limits on FCNC $t \rightarrow qV$ branching ratios are also shown as a function of the centre-of-mass-energy (lower right).

2514 **3.2.2 FCNC Top Quark Couplings**

2515 Single top quark NC DIS production can be used to search for flavour Changing Neutral Current
 2516 (FCNC) $tu\gamma$, $tc\gamma$, tuZ , and tcZ couplings [383,384] as represented by the Lagrangian

$$L = \sum_{q=u,c} \left(\frac{g_e}{2m_t} \bar{t}\sigma^{\mu\nu} (\lambda_q^L P_L + \lambda_q^R P_R) q A_{\mu\nu} + \frac{g_W}{4c_W m_Z} \bar{t}\sigma^{\mu\nu} (\kappa_q^L P_L + \kappa_q^R P_R) q Z_{\mu\nu} \right) + h.c. , \quad (3.16)$$

2517 where g_e (g_W) is the electromagnetic (weak) coupling constant, c_W is the cosine of the weak
 2518 mixing angle, $\lambda_q^{L,R}$ and $\kappa_q^{L,R}$ are the strengths of the anomalous top FCNC couplings (the values
 2519 of these couplings vanish at the lowest order in the SM). In an elaborate analysis events including
 2520 at least one electron and three jets (hadronic top quark decay) with high transverse momentum
 2521 and within the pseudorapidity acceptance range of the detector are selected. The distributions
 2522 of the invariant mass of two jets (reconstructed W boson mass) and an additional jet tagged as
 2523 b -jet (reconstructed top quark mass) are used to further enhance signal over background events,
 2524 mainly given by W + jets production. Signal and background interference effects are included.
 2525 A detector simulation with DELPHES [377] is applied.

2526 The expected limits on the branching ratios $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma)$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ)$ as a function of the
 2527 integrated luminosity at the 2σ C.L. are presented in Fig. 3.13 (middle right). Assuming an
 2528 integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , limits of $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma) < 1 \cdot 10^{-5}$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ) < 4 \cdot 10^{-5}$ are
 2529 expected. This level of precision is close to actual predictions of concrete new phenomena models,
 2530 such as SUSY, little Higgs, and technicolour, that have the potential to produce FCNC top quark
 2531 couplings. This will improve on existing limits from the LHC by one order of magnitude [386].
 2532 Fig. 3.13 (lower left) shows how this sensitivity on $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma)$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ)$ changes as a
 2533 function of centre-of-mass energy. At a future FCC-ep [386] with, for example, an electron beam
 2534 energy of 60 GeV, and a proton beam energy of 50 TeV, leading to a centre-of-mass energy of
 2535 3.5 TeV, the sensitivity on FCNC $tq\gamma$ couplings even exceed expected sensitivities from the High
 2536 Luminosity-LHC (HL-LHC) with 300 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 14 \text{ TeV}$, and from the International Linear
 2537 Collider (ILC) with 500 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 250 \text{ GeV}$ [387,388].

2538 Another example for a sensitive search for anomalous top quark couplings is the one for FCNC
 2539 tHq couplings as defined in

$$L = \kappa_{tuH} \bar{t}uH + \kappa_{tcH} \bar{t}cH + h.c. \quad (3.17)$$

2540 This can be studied in CC DIS production, where singly produced top anti-quarks could decay
 2541 via such couplings into a light anti-quark and a Higgs boson decaying into a bottom quark-
 2542 antiquark pair, $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e H \bar{q} \rightarrow \nu_e b \bar{b} \bar{q}$ [385]. Another signal involves the FCNC tHq
 2543 coupling in the production vertex, i.e. a light quark from the proton interacts via t-channel top
 2544 quark exchange with a W boson radiated from the initial electron producing a b quark and a
 2545 Higgs boson decaying into a bottom quark-antiquark pair, $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e H b \rightarrow \nu_e b \bar{b}$ [385]. This
 2546 channel is superior in sensitivity to the previous one due to the clean experimental environment
 2547 when requiring three identified b -jets. Largest backgrounds are given by $Z \rightarrow b\bar{b}$, SM $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$,
 2548 and single top quark production with hadronic top quark decays. A 5% systematic uncertainty
 2549 for the background yields is added. Furthermore, the analysis assumes parameterised resolutions
 2550 for electrons, photons, muons, jets and unclustered energy using typical parameters taken from
 2551 the ATLAS experiment. Furthermore, a b -tag rate of 60%, a c -jet fake rate of 10%, and a light-
 2552 jet fake rate of 1% is assumed. The selection is optimised for the different signal contributions
 2553 separately. Fig. 3.13 (lower right), shows the expected upper limit on the branching ratio
 2554 $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow Hu)$ with 1σ , 2σ , 3σ , and 5σ C.L. as a function of the integrated luminosity for the

2555 $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e H b \rightarrow \nu_e b\bar{b}b$ signal process. For an integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , upper limits of
 2556 $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow Hu) < 0.15 \cdot 10^{-3}$ are expected at the 2σ C.L.

2557 In Fig. 3.14 the different expected limits on various flavour-changing neutral current (FCNC)
 2558 top quark couplings from the LHeC are summarised, and compared to results from the LHC
 2559 and the HL-LHC. This clearly shows the competitiveness of the LHeC results, and documents
 2560 the complementarity of the results gained at different colliders.

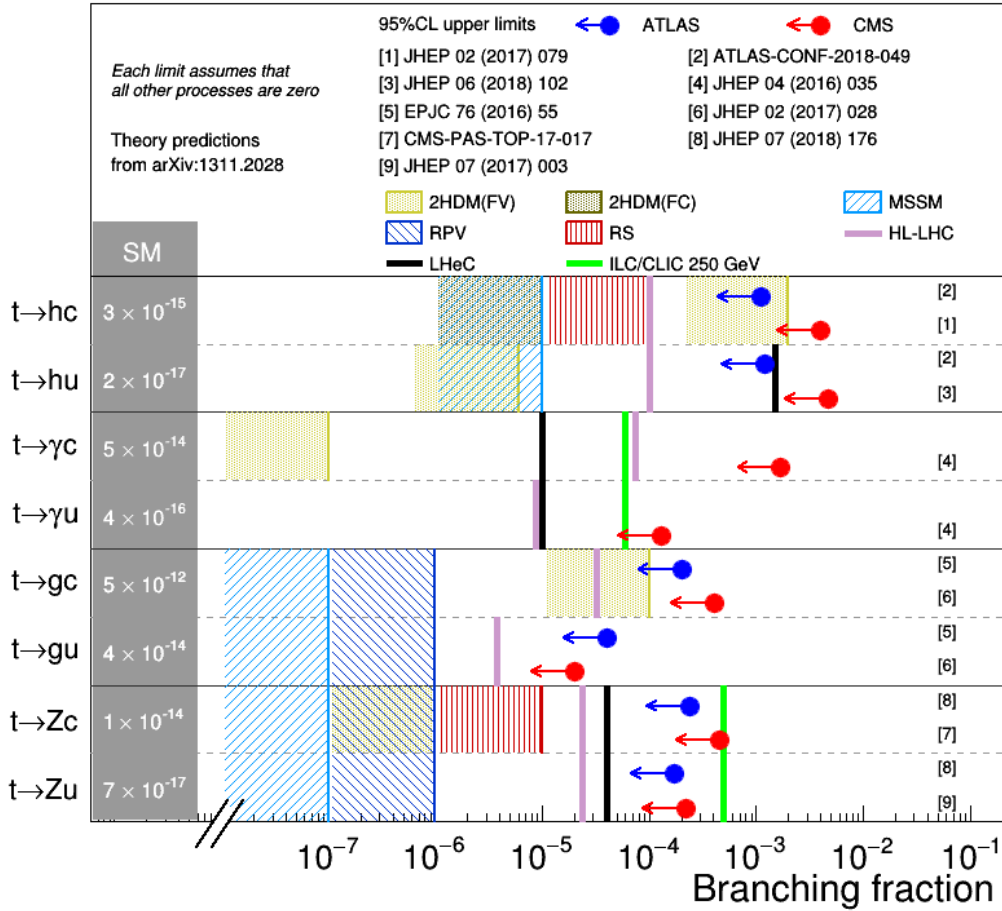


Figure 3.14: Comparison of top quark FCNC branching ratio limits at the LHC, HL-LHC, LHeC, and ILC/CLIC colliders.

2561 3.2.3 Other Top Quark Property Measurements and Searches for New Physics

2562 Other exciting results not presented here involve, for example, the study of the CP-nature
 2563 in $t\bar{t}H$ production [389] (see Section ??), searches for anomalous $t\bar{t}\gamma$ and $t\bar{t}Z$ chromoelectric
 2564 and chromomagnetic dipole moments in $t\bar{t}$ production [376], the study of top quark spin and
 2565 polarisation [390], and the investigation of the top quark structure function inside the proton [1,
 2566 8].

2567 3.2.4 Summary Top Quark Physics

2568 Top quark physics at the LHeC represents a very rich and diverse field of research involving high
 2569 precision measurements of top quark properties, and sensitive searches for new physics. Only a

2570 few highlights involving Wtq and FCNC top quark couplings are presented here. One particular
2571 highlight is the expected direct measurement of the CKM matrix element $|V_{tb}|$ with a precision
2572 of less than 1%. Furthermore, FCNC top quark couplings can be studied with a precision high
2573 enough to explore those couplings in a regime that might be affected by actual new phenomena
2574 models, such as SUSY, little Higgs, and technicolour.

2575 It has been shown [386], that results from future e^+e^- -colliders, eh -colliders, and hh -colliders
2576 deliver complimentary information and will therefore give us a more complete understanding of
2577 the properties of the heaviest elementary particle known to date, and of the top quark sector in
2578 general.

2579 Bibliography [read the footnote]⁹⁹⁹

- 2580 [1] LHeC Study Group, J. L. Abelleira *et al.*, *J. Phys. G* **39** (2012) 075001,
2581 [arXiv:1206.2913](#).
- 2582 [2] E. D. Bloom *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **23** (1969) 930.
- 2583 [3] M. Breidenbach, J. I. Friedman, H. W. Kendall, E. D. Bloom, D. H. Coward, H. C.
2584 DeStaebler, J. Drees, L. W. Mo and R. E. Taylor, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **23** (1969) 935.
- 2585 [4] R. P. Feynman, *Photon-hadron interactions*. Westview Press, Reading, MA, 1972.
- 2586 [5] C. Quigg, *PoS DIS2013* (2013) 034, [arXiv:1308.6637](#).
- 2587 [6] J. C. Collins, D. E. Soper and G. F. Sterman, *Factorization of Hard Processes in QCD*,
2588 vol. 5, pp. 1–91. 1989. [arXiv:hep-ph/0409313](#).
- 2589 [7] LHeC Study Group, J. L. Abelleira *et al.*, “On the Relation of the LHeC and the LHC,”
2590 2012. [arXiv:1211.5102](#).
- 2591 [8] G. R. Boroun, *Phys. Lett.* **B744** (2015) 142–145, [arXiv:1503.01590](#).
- 2592 [9] T. J. Hobbs, J. T. Londergan, D. P. Murdock and A. W. Thomas, *Phys. Lett.* **B698**
2593 (2011) 123, [arXiv:1101.3923](#).
- 2594 [10] M. Klein, “The structure of the proton and HERA,” in *International Conference on the*
2595 *Structure and Interactions of the Photon and 18th International Workshop on*
2596 *Photon-Photon Collisions and International Workshop on High Energy Photon Linear*
2597 *Colliders*, 1 2010.
- 2598 [11] M. Klein and R. Yoshida, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* **61** (2008) 343, [arXiv:0805.3334](#).

⁹⁹⁹ Note on bibliography:

- Put all *bibitems* into file `../lhcc.bib`.
- Use ‘inspirehep.net’ bibtex entries whenever possible
- Check for duplicates in the bib file
- Use entry-type ‘@article’ for regular articles (also doi and/or arXiv references are used). Use entry-type @inproceedings for other items (using at least: author. Specify then Publisher or booktitle where this article appeared (i.e. a talk, a chapter in a book, a technical note, a webpage, etc...), and provide title, year, month, url, doi, etc. if available.).
- Do not forget to commit the updated .bib file to the repository
- There will be only a single bibliography at the end of the CDR document. This bibliography section is only for editing purposes and disappears in the final document.

- 2599 [12] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, F. Aaron *et al.*, *JHEP* 1001 (2010) 109, [arXiv:0911.0884](#).
- 2600 [13] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 75 (2015) 580,
2601 [arXiv:1506.06042](#).
- 2602 [14] HERAFitter Group, S. Alekhin *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 75 (2015) 304, [arXiv:1410.4412](#).
- 2603 [15] H1 Collaboration, F. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 64 (2009) 561, [arXiv:0904.3513](#).
- 2604 [16] M. Botje, *Comput. Phys. Commun.* 182 (2011) 490, [arXiv:1005.1481](#).
- 2605 [17] M. Botje, “Erratum for the time-like evolution in QCDNUM,” 2016. [arXiv:1602.08383](#).
- 2606 [18] R. Thorne, *Phys.Rev. D* 73 (2006) 054019, [arXiv:0601245](#).
- 2607 [19] R. Thorne, *Phys.Rev. D* 86 (2012) 074017, [arXiv:1201.6180](#).
- 2608 [20] F. James and M. Roos, *Comp. Phys. Comm.* 10 (1975) 343.
- 2609 [21] M. Klein, “Future Deep Inelastic Scattering with the LHeC,” in *From My Vast*
2610 *Repertoire ...: Guido Altarelli’s Legacy*, A. Levy, S. Forte and G. Ridolfi (eds.), p. 303.
2611 2019. [arXiv:1802.04317](#).
- 2612 [22] S. Bentvelsen, J. Engelen and P. Kooijman, “Reconstruction of (x, Q^{*2}) and extraction
2613 of structure functions in neutral current scattering at HERA,” in *Workshop on Physics*
2614 *at HERA Hamburg, Germany, October 29-30, 1991, 1992*.
- 2615 [23] U. Bassler and G. Bernardi, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 361 (1995) 197–208,
2616 [arXiv:hep-ex/9412004](#).
- 2617 [24] U. Bassler and G. Bernardi, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 426 (1999) 583–598,
2618 [arXiv:hep-ex/9801017](#).
- 2619 [25] J. Blümlein and M. Klein, “Kinematics and resolution at future e p colliders,” in *1990*
2620 *DPF Summer Study on High-energy Physics: Research Directions for the Decade*
2621 *(Snowmass 90) Snowmass, Colorado, June 25-July 13, 1990, 1990*.
- 2622 [26] R. Abdul Khalek, S. Bailey, J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, [arXiv:1906.10127](#).
- 2623 [27] S. J. Brodsky and G. R. Farrar, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 31 (1973) 1153.
- 2624 [28] S. J. Brodsky and G. R. Farrar, *Phys. Rev. D* 11 (1975) 1309.
- 2625 [29] V. A. Matveev, R. M. Muradian and A. N. Tavkhelidze, *Lett. Nuovo Cim.* 7 (1973) 719.
- 2626 [30] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 79 (2019) 970, [arXiv:1907.05120](#).
- 2627 [31] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78 (2018) 473,
2628 [arXiv:1804.01019](#).
- 2629 [32] J. Kuti and V. F. Weisskopf, *Phys. Rev. D* 4 (1971) 3418–3439.
- 2630 [33] S. Dulat *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 93 (2016) 033006, [arXiv:1506.07443](#).
- 2631 [34] W. G. Seligman *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 79 (1997) 1213–1216, [arXiv:hep-ex/9701017](#).
- 2632 [35] NuTeV Collaboration, M. Tzanov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 74 (2006) 012008,
2633 [arXiv:hep-ex/0509010](#).
- 2634 [36] CHORUS Collaboration, G. Onengut *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B* 632 (2006) 65–75.
- 2635 [37] J. P. Berge *et al.*, *Z. Phys. C* 49 (1991) 187–224.

- 2636 [38] NOMAD Collaboration, O. Samoylov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B876 (2013) 339–375,
2637 [arXiv:1308.4750](#).
- 2638 [39] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 109 (2012) 012001,
2639 [arXiv:1203.4051](#).
- 2640 [40] CMS Collaboration, S. Chatrchyan *et al.*, *JHEP* 02 (2014) 013, [arXiv:1310.1138](#).
- 2641 [41] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *JHEP* 05 (2014) 068, [arXiv:1402.6263](#).
- 2642 [42] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 77 (2017) 367,
2643 [arXiv:1612.03016](#).
- 2644 [43] S. Alekhin, J. Bluemlein and S. Moch, *Phys. Lett.* B777 (2018) 134–140,
2645 [arXiv:1708.01067](#).
- 2646 [44] A. M. Cooper-Sarkar and K. Wichmann, *Phys. Rev.* D98 (2018) 014027,
2647 [arXiv:1803.00968](#).
- 2648 [45] H. Abdolmaleki *et al.*, [arXiv:1907.01014](#).
- 2649 [46] O. Behnke, A. Geiser and M. Lisovskyi, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 84 (2015) 1–72,
2650 [arXiv:1506.07519](#).
- 2651 [47] O. Zenaiev, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 77 (2017) 151, [arXiv:1612.02371](#).
- 2652 [48] M. A. G. Aivazis, F. I. Olness and W.-K. Tung, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 65 (1990) 2339.
- 2653 [49] M. A. G. Aivazis, F. I. Olness and W.-K. Tung, *Phys. Rev.* D50 (1994) 3085,
2654 [arXiv:hep-ph/9312318](#).
- 2655 [50] M. A. G. Aivazis, J. C. Collins, F. I. Olness and W.-K. Tung, *Phys. Rev.* D50 (1994)
2656 [3102](#), [arXiv:hep-ph/9312319](#).
- 2657 [51] R. S. Thorne and R. G. Roberts, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 19 (2001) 339, [arXiv:hep-ph/0010344](#).
- 2658 [52] S. Alekhin, J. Blümlein and S. Moch, *Phys. Rev.* D86 (2012) 054009, [arXiv:1202.2281](#).
- 2659 [53] S. Alekhin, J. Blümlein and S. Moch, *Phys. Rev.* D89 (2014) 054028, [arXiv:1310.3059](#).
- 2660 [54] S. Alekhin, J. Blümlein, S. Klein and S. Moch, *Phys. Rev.* D81 (2010) 014032,
2661 [arXiv:0908.2766](#).
- 2662 [55] S. Forte, E. Laenen, P. Nason and J. Rojo, *Nucl. Phys.* B834 (2010) 116,
2663 [arXiv:1001.2312](#).
- 2664 [56] A. D. Martin, W. J. Stirling, R. S. Thorne and G. Watt, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 70 (2010) 51,
2665 [arXiv:1007.2624](#).
- 2666 [57] R. D. Ball, V. Bertone, F. Cerutti, L. Del Debbio, S. Forte, A. Guffanti, J. I. Latorre,
2667 J. Rojo and M. Ubiali, *Nucl. Phys.* B849 (2011) 296, [arXiv:1101.1300](#).
- 2668 [58] R. D. Ball, M. Bonvini and L. Rottoli, *JHEP* 11 (2015) 122, [arXiv:1510.02491](#).
- 2669 [59] S. Alekhin, J. Bluemlein, S. Moch and R. Placakyte, *Phys. Rev. D* 96 (2017) 014011,
2670 [arXiv:1701.05838](#).
- 2671 [60] S. Moch, B. Ruijl, T. Ueda, J. A. M. Vermaseren and A. Vogt, *JHEP* 10 (2017) 041,
2672 [arXiv:1707.08315](#).

- 2673 [61] F. Herzog, S. Moch, B. Ruijl, T. Ueda, J. A. M. Vermaseren and A. Vogt, *Phys. Lett.*
2674 *B790* (2019) 436–443, [arXiv:1812.11818](#).
- 2675 [62] G. Das, S.-O. Moch and A. Vogt, [arXiv:1912.12920](#).
- 2676 [63] R. D. Ball, *AIP Conf. Proc.* 1819 (2017) 030002, [arXiv:1612.03790](#).
- 2677 [64] A. Accardi *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. A52* (2016) 268, [arXiv:1212.1701](#).
- 2678 [65] A. V. Belitsky, X.-d. Ji and F. Yuan, *Phys. Rev. D69* (2004) 074014,
2679 [arXiv:hep-ph/0307383](#).
- 2680 [66] N. N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *Z. Phys. C49* (1991) 607.
- 2681 [67] N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *Z. Phys. C53* (1992) 331.
- 2682 [68] N. N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *J. Exp. Theor. Phys.* 78 (1994) 598. [Zh. Eksp. Teor.
2683 Fiz.105,1117(1994)].
- 2684 [69] N. N. Nikolaev, B. G. Zakharov and V. R. Zoller, *Z. Phys. A351* (1995) 435.
- 2685 [70] A. H. Müller, *Nucl. Phys. B415* (1994) 373.
- 2686 [71] A. H. Müller and B. Patel, *Nucl. Phys. B425* (1994) 471, [arXiv:hep-ph/9403256](#).
- 2687 [72] U. Amaldi and K. R. Schubert, *Nucl. Phys. B166* (1980) 301.
- 2688 [73] S. Munier, A. M. Stasto and A. H. Müller, *Nucl. Phys. B603* (2001) 427,
2689 [arXiv:hep-ph/0102291](#).
- 2690 [74] N. Armesto and A. H. Rezaeian, *Phys. Rev. D90* (2014) 054003, [arXiv:1402.4831](#).
- 2691 [75] H. Kowalski and D. Teaney, *Phys. Rev. D68* (2003) 114005, [arXiv:hep-ph/0304189](#).
- 2692 [76] H. Kowalski, L. Motyka and G. Watt, *Phys. Rev. D74* (2006) 074016,
2693 [arXiv:hep-ph/0606272](#).
- 2694 [77] G. Watt and H. Kowalski, *Phys. Rev. D78* (2008) 014016, [arXiv:0712.2670](#).
- 2695 [78] L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 63 (1986) 904. [Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.90,1536(1986)].
- 2696 [79] Y. Hatta, B.-W. Xiao and F. Yuan, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 116 (2016) 202301,
2697 [arXiv:1601.01585](#).
- 2698 [80] T. Altinoluk, N. Armesto, G. Beuf and A. H. Rezaeian, *Phys. Lett. B758* (2016) 373,
2699 [arXiv:1511.07452](#).
- 2700 [81] H. Mäntysaari, N. Muller and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. D99* (2019) 074004,
2701 [arXiv:1902.05087](#).
- 2702 [82] F. Salazar and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. D100* (2019) 034007, [arXiv:1905.03763](#).
- 2703 [83] H. Mäntysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 117 (2016) 052301, [arXiv:1603.04349](#).
- 2704 [84] H. Mäntysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. D94* (2016) 034042, [arXiv:1607.01711](#).
- 2705 [85] H. Mäntysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Lett. B772* (2017) 832, [arXiv:1703.09256](#).
- 2706 [86] H. Mäntysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. D98* (2018) 034013, [arXiv:1806.06783](#).
- 2707 [87] J. Cepila, J. G. Contreras and J. D. Tapia Takaki, *Phys. Lett. B766* (2017) 186,
2708 [arXiv:1608.07559](#).

- 2709 [88] D. Bendova, J. Cepila and J. G. Contreras, *Phys. Rev. D* **99** (2019) 034025,
2710 [arXiv:1811.06479](#).
- 2711 [89] M. Krelina, V. P. Goncalves and J. Cepila, *Nucl. Phys. A* **989** (2019) 187,
2712 [arXiv:1905.06759](#).
- 2713 [90] G. Zweig, “An SU(3) model for strong interaction symmetry and its breaking. Version
2714 1,” 1964.
- 2715 [91] H. Fritzsch, M. Gell-Mann and H. Leutwyler, *Phys. Lett.* **47B** (1973) 365–368.
- 2716 [92] D. J. Gross and F. Wilczek, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **30** (1973) 1343–1346.
- 2717 [93] H. D. Politzer, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **30** (1973) 1346–1349.
- 2718 [94] G. Dissertori, *Adv. Ser. Direct. High Energy Phys.* **26** (2016) 113–128,
2719 [arXiv:1506.05407](#).
- 2720 [95] Particle Data Group, M. Tanabashi *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* **98** (2018) 030001.
- 2721 [96] D. d’Enterria *et al.*, *PoS ALPHAS2019* (2019) 001, [arXiv:1907.01435](#).
- 2722 [97] K. H. Streng, T. F. Walsh and P. M. Zerwas, *Z. Phys.* **C2** (1979) 237.
- 2723 [98] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C67** (2010) 1, [arXiv:0911.5678](#).
- 2724 [99] S. D. Ellis and D. E. Soper, *Phys. Rev. D* **48** (1993) 3160–3166, [arXiv:hep-ph/9305266](#).
- 2725 [100] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C13** (2000) 397,
2726 [arXiv:hep-ex/9812024](#).
- 2727 [101] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C19** (2001) 289,
2728 [arXiv:hep-ex/0010054](#).
- 2729 [102] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B542** (2002) 193, [arXiv:hep-ex/0206029](#).
- 2730 [103] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C33** (2004) 477,
2731 [arXiv:hep-ex/0310019](#).
- 2732 [104] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C37** (2004) 141,
2733 [arXiv:hep-ex/0401010](#).
- 2734 [105] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B653** (2007) 134, [arXiv:0706.3722](#).
- 2735 [106] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C65** (2010) 363, [arXiv:0904.3870](#).
- 2736 [107] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C75** (2015) 65, [arXiv:1406.4709](#).
- 2737 [108] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C77** (2017) 215, [arXiv:1611.03421](#).
- 2738 [109] ZEUS Collaboration, J. Breitweg *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B479** (2000) 37,
2739 [arXiv:hep-ex/0002010](#).
- 2740 [110] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C23** (2002) 13,
2741 [arXiv:hep-ex/0109029](#).
- 2742 [111] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B547** (2002) 164,
2743 [arXiv:hep-ex/0208037](#).
- 2744 [112] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C35** (2004) 487,
2745 [arXiv:hep-ex/0404033](#).

- 2746 [113] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B765 (2007) 1,
2747 [arXiv:hep-ex/0608048](#).
- 2748 [114] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B649 (2007) 12,
2749 [arXiv:hep-ex/0701039](#).
- 2750 [115] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C70 (2010) 965,
2751 [arXiv:1010.6167](#).
- 2752 [116] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B691 (2010) 127,
2753 [arXiv:1003.2923](#).
- 2754 [117] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 03 (2017) 156, [arXiv:1609.05331](#).
- 2755 [118] K. Rabbertz, *Springer Tracts Mod. Phys.* 268 (2017) 1.
- 2756 [119] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *JHEP* 09 (2017) 020, [arXiv:1706.03192](#).
- 2757 [120] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *JHEP* 05 (2018) 195, [arXiv:1711.02692](#).
- 2758 [121] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann and J. Niehues, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 117 (2016) 042001,
2759 [arXiv:1606.03991](#).
- 2760 [122] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann, A. Huss and J. Niehues, *JHEP* 07 (2017) 018,
2761 [arXiv:1703.05977](#).
- 2762 [123] T. Gehrmann *et al.*, *PoS RADCOR2017* (2018) 074, [arXiv:1801.06415](#).
- 2763 [124] T. Kluge, K. Rabbertz and M. Wobisch, “FastNLO: Fast pQCD calculations for PDF
2764 fits,” in *Proceedings, 14th International Workshop of deep inelastic scattering (DIS*
2765 *2006), Tsukuba, Japan, April 20-24, 2006*, 2006. [arXiv:hep-ph/0609285](#).
- 2766 [125] D. Britzger, K. Rabbertz, F. Stober and M. Wobisch, “New features in version 2 of the
2767 fastNLO project,” in *Proceedings, 20th International Workshop on Deep-Inelastic*
2768 *Scattering and Related Subjects (DIS 2012): Bonn, Germany, March 26-30, 2012*, 2012.
2769 [arXiv:1208.3641](#).
- 2770 [126] D. Britzger *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C79 (2019) 845, [arXiv:1906.05303](#).
- 2771 [127] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C77 (2017) 791, [arXiv:1709.07251](#).
- 2772 [128] R. Kogler, *Measurement of jet production in deep-inelastic e p scattering at HERA*. PhD
2773 thesis, Hamburg U., 2011.
- 2774 [129] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JINST* 12 (2017) P02014,
2775 [arXiv:1607.03663](#).
- 2776 [130] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, “Determination of jet calibration and energy
2777 resolution in proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV using the ATLAS detector,” 2019.
2778 [arXiv:1910.04482](#).
- 2779 [131] J. R. Ellis, E. Gardi, M. Karliner and M. A. Samuel, *Phys. Lett.* B366 (1996) 268,
2780 [arXiv:hep-ph/9509312](#).
- 2781 [132] S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev.* D85 (2012) 034038, [arXiv:1111.6175](#).
2782 [Erratum: *Phys. Rev.*D86,079903(2012)].
- 2783 [133] S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 109 (2012) 042002, [arXiv:1203.5312](#).
- 2784 [134] S. J. Brodsky and L. Di Giustino, *Phys. Rev.* D86 (2012) 085026, [arXiv:1107.0338](#).

- 2785 [135] M. Mojaza, S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 110 (2013) 192001,
2786 [arXiv:1212.0049](#).
- 2787 [136] S. J. Brodsky, M. Mojaza and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. D*89 (2014) 014027,
2788 [arXiv:1304.4631](#).
- 2789 [137] S.-Q. Wang, S. J. Brodsky, X.-G. Wu, J.-M. Shen and L. Di Giustino, *Phys. Rev. D*100
2790 (2019) 094010, [arXiv:1908.00060](#).
- 2791 [138] Particle Data Group, M. Tanabashi *et al.*, “2019 Update of the Review of Particle
2792 Physics,”. <http://pdg.lbl.gov/2019/>. unpublished.
- 2793 [139] Flavour Lattice Averaging Group, S. Aoki *et al.*, [arXiv:1902.08191](#).
- 2794 [140] D. Boito, M. Golterman, K. Maltman, J. Osborne and S. Peris, *Phys. Rev. D*91 (2015)
2795 034003, [arXiv:1410.3528](#).
- 2796 [141] Gfitter Group, M. Baak, J. Cúth, J. Haller, A. Hoecker, R. Kogler, K. Mönig, M. Schott
2797 and J. Stelzer, *Eur. Phys. J. C*74 (2014) 3046, [arXiv:1407.3792](#).
- 2798 [142] P. Azzi *et al.*, *CERN Yellow Rep. Monogr.* 7 (2019) 1–220, [arXiv:1902.04070](#).
- 2799 [143] I. Abt, A. M. Cooper-Sarkar, B. Foster, V. Myronenko, K. Wichmann and M. Wing,
2800 *Phys. Rev. D*96 (2017) 014001, [arXiv:1704.03187](#). [Phys. Rev.D96,014001(2017)].
- 2801 [144] M. Dasgupta and G. P. Salam, *J. Phys.* G30 (2004) R143, [arXiv:hep-ph/0312283](#).
- 2802 [145] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*46 (2006) 343–356,
2803 [arXiv:hep-ex/0512014](#).
- 2804 [146] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B767 (2007) 1–28,
2805 [arXiv:hep-ex/0604032](#).
- 2806 [147] D. Kang, C. Lee and I. W. Stewart, *Phys. Rev. D*88 (2013) 054004, [arXiv:1303.6952](#).
- 2807 [148] Z.-B. Kang, X. Liu and S. Mantry, *Phys. Rev. D*90 (2014) 014041, [arXiv:1312.0301](#).
- 2808 [149] D. Kang, C. Lee and I. W. Stewart, *PoS DIS2015* (2015) 142.
- 2809 [150] G. Abelof, R. Boughezal, X. Liu and F. Petriello, *Phys. Lett.* B763 (2016) 52–59,
2810 [arXiv:1607.04921](#).
- 2811 [151] S. Höche, S. Kuttimalai and Y. Li, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 114013, [arXiv:1809.04192](#).
- 2812 [152] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann, E. W. N. Glover, A. Huss, J. Niehues and A. Vogt, *JHEP* 05
2813 (2018) 209, [arXiv:1803.09973](#).
- 2814 [153] T. Gehrmann, A. Huss, J. Mo and J. Niehues, [arXiv:1909.02760](#).
- 2815 [154] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*29 (2003) 497–513,
2816 [arXiv:hep-ex/0302034](#).
- 2817 [155] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B639 (2006) 21–31,
2818 [arXiv:hep-ex/0603014](#).
- 2819 [156] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D*76 (2007) 072011,
2820 [arXiv:0706.3809](#).
- 2821 [157] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B864 (2012) 1–37,
2822 [arXiv:1205.6153](#).

- 2823 [158] M. Klasen, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 74 (2002) 1221–1282, [arXiv:hep-ph/0206169](#).
- 2824 [159] M. Glück, E. Reya and A. Vogt, *Phys. Rev. D* 46 (1992) 1973–1979.
- 2825 [160] K. Sasaki, T. Ueda and T. Uematsu, *CERN Proc.* 1 (2018) 7.
- 2826 [161] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *JHEP* 09 (2015) 149,
2827 [arXiv:1503.06042](#).
- 2828 [162] A. J. Larkoski, I. Moult and B. Nachman, [arXiv:1709.04464](#).
- 2829 [163] J. R. Andersen *et al.*, “Les Houches 2017: Physics at TeV Colliders Standard Model
2830 Working Group Report,” 2018. [arXiv:1803.07977](#).
- 2831 [164] F. Ringer, *PoS ALPHAS2019* (2019) 010.
- 2832 [165] I. I. Balitsky and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 28 (1978) 822. [*Yad.*
2833 *Fiz.*28,1597(1978)].
- 2834 [166] E. A. Kuraev, L. N. Lipatov and V. S. Fadin, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 45 (1977) 199. [*Zh. Eksp.*
2835 *Teor. Fiz.*72,377(1977)].
- 2836 [167] V. S. Fadin and L. N. Lipatov, *Phys. Lett.* B429 (1998) 127, [arXiv:hep-ph/9802290](#).
- 2837 [168] M. Ciafaloni and G. Camici, *Phys. Lett.* B430 (1998) 349, [arXiv:hep-ph/9803389](#).
- 2838 [169] J. Blümlein and A. Vogt, *Phys. Rev. D* 58 (1998) 014020, [arXiv:hep-ph/9712546](#).
- 2839 [170] D. A. Ross, *Phys. Lett.* B431 (1998) 161, [arXiv:hep-ph/9804332](#).
- 2840 [171] Y. V. Kovchegov and A. H. Müller, *Phys. Lett.* B439 (1998) 428,
2841 [arXiv:hep-ph/9805208](#).
- 2842 [172] E. Levin, *Nucl. Phys.* B545 (1999) 481, [arXiv:hep-ph/9806228](#).
- 2843 [173] N. Armesto, J. Bartels and M. A. Braun, *Phys. Lett.* B442 (1998) 459,
2844 [arXiv:hep-ph/9808340](#).
- 2845 [174] M. Ciafaloni, *Nucl. Phys.* B296 (1988) 49.
- 2846 [175] B. Andersson, G. Gustafson and J. Samuelsson, *Nucl. Phys.* B467 (1996) 443.
- 2847 [176] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and P. J. Sutton, *Z. Phys.* C71 (1996) 585,
2848 [arXiv:hep-ph/9602320](#).
- 2849 [177] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev. D* 56 (1997) 3991,
2850 [arXiv:hep-ph/9703445](#).
- 2851 [178] G. P. Salam, *JHEP* 07 (1998) 019, [arXiv:hep-ph/9806482](#).
- 2852 [179] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai and G. P. Salam, *JHEP* 10 (1999) 017, [arXiv:hep-ph/9907409](#).
- 2853 [180] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai and G. P. Salam, *Phys. Rev. D* 60 (1999) 114036,
2854 [arXiv:hep-ph/9905566](#).
- 2855 [181] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Lett.* B576
2856 (2003) 143, [arXiv:hep-ph/0305254](#).
- 2857 [182] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Lett.* B587 (2004) 87,
2858 [arXiv:hep-ph/0311325](#).

- 2859 [183] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev. D* **68** (2003) 114003,
2860 [arXiv:hep-ph/0307188](#).
- 2861 [184] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *JHEP* **08** (2007) 046,
2862 [arXiv:0707.1453](#).
- 2863 [185] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys. B* **575** (2000) 313,
2864 [arXiv:hep-ph/9911273](#).
- 2865 [186] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys. B* **599** (2001) 383,
2866 [arXiv:hep-ph/0011270](#).
- 2867 [187] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys. B* **621** (2002) 359,
2868 [arXiv:hep-ph/0109178](#).
- 2869 [188] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys. B* **674** (2003) 459,
2870 [arXiv:hep-ph/0306156](#).
- 2871 [189] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys. B* **799** (2008) 199, [arXiv:0802.0032](#).
- 2872 [190] R. S. Thorne, *Phys. Rev. D* **64** (2001) 074005, [arXiv:hep-ph/0103210](#).
- 2873 [191] A. Sabio Vera, *Nucl. Phys. B* **722** (2005) 65, [arXiv:hep-ph/0505128](#).
- 2874 [192] M. Bonvini, S. Marzani and T. Peraro, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **76** (2016) 597,
2875 [arXiv:1607.02153](#).
- 2876 [193] V. Bertone, S. Carrazza and J. Rojo, *Comput. Phys. Commun.* **185** (2014) 1647,
2877 [arXiv:1310.1394](#).
- 2878 [194] M. Bonvini, S. Marzani and C. Muselli, *JHEP* **12** (2017) 117, [arXiv:1708.07510](#).
- 2879 [195] A. H. Müller, *Nucl. Phys. B* **335** (1990) 115.
- 2880 [196] R. D. Ball, V. Bertone, M. Bonvini, S. Marzani, J. Rojo and L. Rottoli, *Eur. Phys. J. C*
2881 **78** (2018) 321, [arXiv:1710.05935](#).
- 2882 [197] H. Abdolmaleki *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **78** (2018) 621, [arXiv:1802.00064](#).
- 2883 [198] J. Butterworth *et al.*, *J. Phys. G* **43** (2016) 023001, [arXiv:1510.03865](#).
- 2884 [199] S. Carrazza, S. Forte, Z. Kassabov, J. I. Latorre and J. Rojo, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **75** (2015)
2885 **369**, [arXiv:1505.06736](#).
- 2886 [200] H. Paukkunen and P. Zurita, *JHEP* **12** (2014) 100, [arXiv:1402.6623](#).
- 2887 [201] J. Rojo and F. Caola, “Parton distributions and small-x QCD at the Large Hadron
2888 Electron Collider,” in *17th International Workshop on Deep-Inelastic Scattering and
2889 Related Subjects (DIS 2009): Madrid, Spain, April 26-30, 2009*, Berlin, Germany, 2009.
2890 [arXiv:0906.2079](#).
- 2891 [202] R. Abdul Khalek, S. Bailey, J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **78**
2892 (2018) 962, [arXiv:1810.03639](#).
- 2893 [203] J. Bartels, K. J. Golec-Biernat and H. Kowalski, *Phys. Rev. D* **66** (2002) 014001,
2894 [arXiv:hep-ph/0203258](#).
- 2895 [204] K. J. Golec-Biernat and S. Sapeta, *Phys. Rev. D* **74** (2006) 054032,
2896 [arXiv:hep-ph/0607276](#).

- 2897 [205] K. Golec-Biernat and S. Sapeta, *JHEP* 03 (2018) 102, [arXiv:1711.11360](#).
- 2898 [206] J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, *Phys. Rept.* 742 (2018) 1, [arXiv:1709.04922](#).
- 2899 [207] V. Bertone, R. Gauld and J. Rojo, *JHEP* 01 (2019) 217, [arXiv:1808.02034](#).
- 2900 [208] L. N. Hand, D. G. Miller and R. Wilson, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 35 (1963) 335.
- 2901 [209] G. Miller *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 5 (1972) 528.
- 2902 [210] E. M. Riordan, A. Bodek, M. Breidenbach, D. L. Dubin, J. E. Elias, J. I. Friedman,
2903 H. W. Kendall, J. S. Poucher, M. R. Sogard and D. H. Coward, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 33
2904 (1974) 561.
- 2905 [211] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 71 (2011) 1579, [arXiv:1012.4355](#).
- 2906 [212] G. Altarelli and G. Martinelli, *Phys. Lett.* 76B (1978) 89.
- 2907 [213] M. Glück, E. Hoffmann and E. Reya, *Z. Phys.* C13 (1982) 119.
- 2908 [214] C. Ewerz and O. Nachtmann, *Annals Phys.* 322 (2007) 1670, [arXiv:hep-ph/0604087](#).
- 2909 [215] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 74 (2014) 2814, [arXiv:1312.4821](#).
- 2910 [216] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 85 (2012) 072004, [arXiv:1109.5141](#).
- 2911 [217] G. Altarelli, *Nuovo Cim.* C035N1 (2012) 1, [arXiv:1106.3189](#).
- 2912 [218] J. Blümlein and M. Klein, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.* A329 (1993) 112.
- 2913 [219] R. Gandhi, C. Quigg, M. H. Reno and I. Sarcevic, *Phys. Rev. D* 58 (1998) 093009,
2914 [arXiv:hep-ph/9807264](#).
- 2915 [220] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *JINST* 12 (2017) P03012,
2916 [arXiv:1612.05093](#).
- 2917 [221] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev. D* 59 (1999) 093002,
2918 [arXiv:astro-ph/9812262](#).
- 2919 [222] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *Nature* 551 (2017) 596, [arXiv:1711.08119](#).
- 2920 [223] T. K. Gaisser, *Cosmic rays and particle physics*. 1990.
2921 <http://www.cambridge.org/uk/catalogue/catalogue.asp?isbn=0521326672>.
- 2922 [224] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 113 (2014) 101101,
2923 [arXiv:1405.5303](#).
- 2924 [225] G. Gelmini, P. Gondolo and G. Varieschi, *Phys. Rev. D* 61 (2000) 056011,
2925 [arXiv:hep-ph/9905377](#).
- 2926 [226] A. Bhattacharya, R. Enberg, Y. S. Jeong, C. S. Kim, M. H. Reno, I. Sarcevic and
2927 A. Stasto, *JHEP* 11 (2016) 167, [arXiv:1607.00193](#).
- 2928 [227] C. Brenner Mariotto and M. Machado, *Phys. Rev. D* 86 (2012) 033009,
2929 [arXiv:1208.5685](#).
- 2930 [228] R. Coelho and V. Goncalves, [arXiv:2002.10713](#).
- 2931 [229] R. Coelho and V. Goncalves, *Nucl. Phys. B* 956 (2020) 115013.
- 2932 [230] M. Bonvini, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78 (2018) 834, [arXiv:1805.08785](#).

- 2933 [231] M. Bonvini, R. Gauld, T. Giani and S. Marzani in preparation.
- 2934 [232] M. Bonvini and F. Silveti in preparation.
- 2935 [233] M. Bonvini and S. Marzani, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **120** (2018) 202003, [arXiv:1802.07758](#).
- 2936 [234] J. C. Collins, D. E. Soper and G. F. Sterman, *Nucl. Phys. B* **250** (1985) 199–224.
- 2937 [235] J. Collins, *Foundations of perturbative QCD*, vol. 32. Cambridge University Press, 11
2938 2013.
- 2939 [236] R. Angeles-Martinez *et al.*, *Acta Phys. Polon. B* **46** (2015) 2501–2534,
2940 [arXiv:1507.05267](#).
- 2941 [237] M. Diehl, *Eur. Phys. J. A* **52** (2016) 149, [arXiv:1512.01328](#).
- 2942 [238] T. C. Rogers, *Eur. Phys. J. A* **52** (2016) 153, [arXiv:1509.04766](#).
- 2943 [239] I. Balitsky and A. Tarasov, *JHEP* **06** (2016) 164, [arXiv:1603.06548](#).
- 2944 [240] S. Catani, M. Ciafaloni and F. Hautmann, *Phys. Lett. B* **242** (1990) 97–102.
- 2945 [241] S. Catani, M. Ciafaloni and F. Hautmann, *Nucl. Phys. B* **366** (1991) 135–188.
- 2946 [242] J. C. Collins and R. Ellis, *Nucl. Phys. B* **360** (1991) 3–30.
- 2947 [243] E. Levin, M. Ryskin, Y. Shabelski and A. Shuvaev, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* **53** (1991) 657.
- 2948 [244] F. Gelis, E. Iancu, J. Jalilian-Marian and R. Venugopalan, *Ann. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* **60**
2949 **(2010)** 463, [arXiv:1002.0333](#).
- 2950 [245] Y. V. Kovchegov and E. Levin, *Camb. Monogr. Part. Phys. Nucl. Phys. Cosmol.* **33**
2951 **(2012)** 1.
- 2952 [246] T. Altinoluk and R. Boussarie, *JHEP* **10** (2019) 208, [arXiv:1902.07930](#).
- 2953 [247] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Z. Phys. C* **76** (1997) 613, [arXiv:hep-ex/9708016](#).
- 2954 [248] ZEUS Collaboration, J. Breitweg *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **1** (1998) 81,
2955 [arXiv:hep-ex/9709021](#).
- 2956 [249] P. Newman and M. Wing, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **86** (2014) 1037, [arXiv:1308.3368](#).
- 2957 [250] V. N. Gribov, *Sov. Phys. JETP* **29** (1969) 483. [Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.56,892(1969)].
- 2958 [251] J. C. Collins, *Phys. Rev. D* **57** (1998) 3051, [arXiv:hep-ph/9709499](#). [Erratum: Phys.
2959 Rev.D61,019902(2000)].
- 2960 [252] A. Berera and D. E. Soper, *Phys. Rev. D* **53** (1996) 6162, [arXiv:hep-ph/9509239](#).
- 2961 [253] L. Trentadue and G. Veneziano, *Phys. Lett. B* **323** (1994) 201.
- 2962 [254] N. Armesto, P. R. Newman, W. Slominski and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev. D* **100** (2019)
2963 **074022**, [arXiv:1901.09076](#).
- 2964 [255] H. Khanpour, *Phys. Rev. D* **99** (2019) 054007, [arXiv:1902.10734](#).
- 2965 [256] H1 Collaboration Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur.Phys.J. C* **48** (2006) 715,
2966 [arXiv:hep-ex/0606004](#).
- 2967 [257] ZEUS Collaboration Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl.Phys. B* **816** (2009) 1,
2968 [arXiv:0812.2003](#).

- 2969 [258] H1 Collaboration Collaboration, F. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur.Phys.J. C*72 (2012) 2074,
2970 [arXiv:1203.4495](#).
- 2971 [259] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*72 (2012) 2175,
2972 [arXiv:1207.4864](#).
- 2973 [260] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B713 (2005) 3,
2974 [arXiv:hep-ex/0501060](#).
- 2975 [261] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*48 (2006) 749,
2976 [arXiv:hep-ex/0606003](#).
- 2977 [262] ZEUS Collaboration Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl.Phys.* B831 (2010) 1,
2978 [arXiv:0911.4119](#).
- 2979 [263] H1 Collaboration, F. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur.Phys.J. C*71 (2011) 1578, [arXiv:1010.1476](#).
- 2980 [264] V. N. Gribov and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 15 (1972) 675. [*Yad.*
2981 *Fiz.*15,1218(1972)].
- 2982 [265] V. N. Gribov and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 15 (1972) 438. [*Yad.*
2983 *Fiz.*15,781(1972)].
- 2984 [266] G. Altarelli and G. Parisi, *Nucl. Phys.* B126 (1977) 298.
- 2985 [267] Y. L. Dokshitzer, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 46 (1977) 641. [*Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.*73,1216(1977)].
- 2986 [268] J. C. Collins and W.-K. Tung, *Nucl. Phys.* B278 (1986) 934.
- 2987 [269] R. S. Thorne and W. K. Tung, [arXiv:0809.0714](#).
- 2988 [270] J. F. Owens, *Phys. Rev.* D30 (1984) 943.
- 2989 [271] M. Glück, E. Reya and A. Vogt, *Z. Phys.* C53 (1992) 651.
- 2990 [272] R. S. Thorne and R. G. Roberts, *Phys. Rev.* D57 (1998) 6871, [arXiv:hep-ph/9709442](#).
- 2991 [273] F. Bordry *et al.*, “Machine Parameters and Projected Luminosity Performance of
2992 Proposed Future Colliders at CERN,” 2018. [arXiv:1810.13022](#).
- 2993 [274] O. Bruening, J. Jowett, M. Klein, D. Pellegrini, D. Schulte and F. Zimmermann, “Future
2994 Circular Collider Study FCC-eh Baseline Parameters,” 2017. CERN
2995 FCC-ACC-RPT-012.
- 2996 [275] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B754 (2016) 214–234,
2997 [arXiv:1511.00502](#).
- 2998 [276] D. Britzger, J. Currie, T. Gehrman, A. Huss, J. Niehues and R. Žlebčík, *Eur. Phys. J.*
2999 *C*78 (2018) 538, [arXiv:1804.05663](#).
- 3000 [277] Z. Nagy, *Phys. Rev.* D68 (2003) 094002, [arXiv:hep-ph/0307268](#).
- 3001 [278] S. J. Brodsky, P. Hoyer, C. Peterson and N. Sakai, *Phys. Lett.* 93B (1980) 451.
- 3002 [279] S. J. Brodsky, A. Kusina, F. Lyonnet, I. Schienbein, H. Spiesberger and R. Vogt, *Adv.*
3003 *High Energy Phys.* 2015 (2015) 231547, [arXiv:1504.06287](#).
- 3004 [280] S. J. Brodsky and S. Gardner, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 116 (2016) 019101, [arXiv:1504.00969](#).
- 3005 [281] G. F. de Teramond and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 102 (2009) 081601,
3006 [arXiv:0809.4899](#).

- 3007 [282] SELEX Collaboration, A. Ocherashvili *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B628 (2005) 18,
3008 [arXiv:hep-ex/0406033](#).
- 3009 [283] ANDY Collaboration, L. C. Bland *et al.*, [arXiv:1909.03124](#).
- 3010 [284] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Teramond, H. G. Dosch and J. Erlich, *Phys. Rept.* 584 (2015) 1,
3011 [arXiv:1407.8131](#).
- 3012 [285] G. F. de Teramond, H. G. Dosch and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* D87 (2013) 075005,
3013 [arXiv:1301.1651](#).
- 3014 [286] V. de Alfaro, S. Fubini and G. Furlan, *Nuovo Cim.* A34 (1976) 569.
- 3015 [287] G. Veneziano, *Nuovo Cim.* A57 (1968) 190.
- 3016 [288] A. Deur, S. J. Brodsky and G. F. de Teramond, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 90 (2016) 1,
3017 [arXiv:1604.08082](#).
- 3018 [289] G. Grunberg, *Phys. Lett.* 95B (1980) 70. [Erratum: *Phys. Lett.* 110B,501(1982)].
- 3019 [290] J. D. Bjorken, *Phys. Rev.* 148 (1966) 1467.
- 3020 [291] A. Deur *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 93 (2004) 212001, [arXiv:hep-ex/0407007](#).
- 3021 [292] A. Deur, Y. Prok, V. Burkert, D. Crabb, F. X. Girod, K. A. Griffioen, N. Guler, S. E.
3022 Kuhn and N. Kvaltine, *Phys. Rev.* D90 (2014) 012009, [arXiv:1405.7854](#).
- 3023 [293] A. Deur *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D78 (2008) 032001, [arXiv:0802.3198](#).
- 3024 [294] S. J. Brodsky and H. J. Lu, *Phys. Rev.* D51 (1995) 3652, [arXiv:hep-ph/9405218](#).
- 3025 [295] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Teramond and A. Deur, *Phys. Rev.* D81 (2010) 096010,
3026 [arXiv:1002.3948](#).
- 3027 [296] A. Deur, S. J. Brodsky and G. F. de Teramond, *Phys. Lett.* B750 (2015) 528,
3028 [arXiv:1409.5488](#).
- 3029 [297] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Téramond, A. Deur and H. G. Dosch, *Few Body Syst.* 56 (2015)
3030 621, [arXiv:1410.0425](#).
- 3031 [298] A. Deur, V. Burkert, J.-P. Chen and W. Korsch, *Phys. Lett.* B650 (2007) 244,
3032 [arXiv:hep-ph/0509113](#).
- 3033 [299] A. Deur, V. Burkert, J. P. Chen and W. Korsch, *Phys. Lett.* B665 (2008) 349,
3034 [arXiv:0803.4119](#).
- 3035 [300] S. J. Brodsky, *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.* 1137 (2019) 012027.
- 3036 [301] G. P. Lepage and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Lett.* 87B (1979) 359.
- 3037 [302] A. V. Efremov and A. V. Radyushkin, *Phys. Lett.* 94B (1980) 245.
- 3038 [303] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. De Téramond and H. G. Dosch, *Phys. Lett.* B729 (2014) 3,
3039 [arXiv:1302.4105](#).
- 3040 [304] S. J. Brodsky, *Few Body Syst.* 57 (2016) 703, [arXiv:1601.06328](#).
- 3041 [305] R. S. Sufian, G. F. de Téramond, S. J. Brodsky, A. Deur and H. G. Dosch, *Phys. Rev.*
3042 D95 (2017) 014011, [arXiv:1609.06688](#).

- 3043 [306] HLFHS Collaboration, G. F. de Teramond, T. Liu, R. S. Sufian, H. G. Dosch, S. J.
3044 Brodsky and A. Deur, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **120** (2018) 182001, [arXiv:1801.09154](#).
- 3045 [307] T. Gutsche, V. E. Lyubovitskij, I. Schmidt and A. Vega, *Phys. Rev.* **D91** (2015) 114001,
3046 [arXiv:1501.02738](#).
- 3047 [308] T. Gutsche, V. E. Lyubovitskij and I. Schmidt, *Phys. Rev.* **D94** (2016) 116006,
3048 [arXiv:1607.04124](#).
- 3049 [309] H. G. Dosch, G. F. de Teramond and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* **D91** (2015) 085016,
3050 [arXiv:1501.00959](#).
- 3051 [310] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Téramond, H. G. Dosch and C. Lorcé, *Int. J. Mod. Phys.* **A31**
3052 (2016) 1630029, [arXiv:1606.04638](#).
- 3053 [311] M. Nielsen, S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Téramond, H. G. Dosch, F. S. Navarra and L. Zou,
3054 *Phys. Rev.* **D98** (2018) 034002, [arXiv:1805.11567](#).
- 3055 [312] G. F. de Teramond, H. G. Dosch and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* **D91** (2015) 045040,
3056 [arXiv:1411.5243](#).
- 3057 [313] S. L. Glashow, *Nucl. Phys.* **22** (1961) 579.
- 3058 [314] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **19** (1967) 1264.
- 3059 [315] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **27** (1971) 1688.
- 3060 [316] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev.* **D5** (1972) 1412.
- 3061 [317] A. Salam and J. C. Ward, *Phys. Lett.* **13** (1964) 168.
- 3062 [318] P. W. Higgs, *Phys. Lett.* **12** (1964) 132.
- 3063 [319] P. W. Higgs, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **13** (1964) 508.
- 3064 [320] F. Englert and R. Brout, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **13** (1964) 321.
- 3065 [321] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B632** (2006) 35, [arXiv:hep-ex/0507080](#).
- 3066 [322] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* **D93** (2016) 092002,
3067 [arXiv:1603.09628](#).
- 3068 [323] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C78** (2018) 777, [arXiv:1806.01176](#).
- 3069 [324] M. Klein and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys.* **C24** (1984) 151.
- 3070 [325] M. Böhm and H. Spiesberger, *Nucl. Phys.* **B294** (1987) 1081.
- 3071 [326] D. Yu. Bardin, C. Burdik, P. C. Khristova and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys.* **C42** (1989) 679.
- 3072 [327] W. Hollik, D. Yu. Bardin, J. Blümlein, B. A. Kniehl, T. Riemann and H. Spiesberger,
3073 “Electroweak parameters at HERA: Theoretical aspects,” in *Workshop on physics at*
3074 *HERA Hamburg, Germany, October 29-30, 1991, 1992*.
- 3075 [328] M. Böhm and H. Spiesberger, *Nucl. Phys.* **B304** (1988) 749.
- 3076 [329] D. Yu. Bardin, K. C. Burdik, P. K. Khristova and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys.* **C44** (1989) 149.
- 3077 [330] A. Sirlin, *Phys. Rev.* **D22** (1980) 971.
- 3078 [331] M. Bohm, H. Spiesberger and W. Hollik, *Fortsch. Phys.* **34** (1986) 687.

- 3079 [332] W. F. L. Hollik, *Fortsch. Phys.* **38** (1990) 165.
- 3080 [333] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *JHEP* **09** (2012) 061, [arXiv:1206.7007](#).
- 3081 [334] D. Britzger and M. Klein, *PoS DIS2017* (2018) 105.
- 3082 [335] H. Spiesberger, “EPRC: A program package for electroweak physics at HERA,” in
3083 *Future physics at HERA. Proceedings, Workshop, Hamburg, Germany, September 25,*
3084 *1995-May 31, 1996. Vol. 1, 2*, 1995.
- 3085 [336] G. Cowan, K. Cranmer, E. Gross and O. Vitells, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C71** (2011) 1554,
3086 [arXiv:1007.1727](#). [Erratum: *Eur. Phys. J.* **C73** (2013) 2501].
- 3087 [337] CDF and D0 Collaborations, [arXiv:1204.0042](#).
- 3088 [338] ALEPH, DELPHI, L3, OPAL, LEP Electroweak Collaboration, S. Schael *et al.*, *Phys.*
3089 *Rept.* **532** (2013) 119, [arXiv:1302.3415](#).
- 3090 [339] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C78** (2018) 110,
3091 [arXiv:1701.07240](#). [Erratum: *Eur. Phys. J.* **C78**,no.11,898(2018)].
- 3092 [340] J. de Blas, M. Ciuchini, E. Franco, S. Mishima, M. Pierini, L. Reina and L. Silvestrini,
3093 *JHEP* **12** (2016) 135, [arXiv:1608.01509](#).
- 3094 [341] J. Haller, A. Hoecker, R. Kogler, K. Mönig, T. Peiffer and J. Stelzer, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C78**
3095 (2018) 675, [arXiv:1803.01853](#).
- 3096 [342] MuLan Collaboration, V. Tishchenko *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* **D87** (2013) 052003,
3097 [arXiv:1211.0960](#).
- 3098 [343] M. Schott, “Global EW fits: experimental and theoretical issues,” Talk presented at the
3099 Ultimate Precision at Hadron Colliders, Sarclay, France, 2019.
- 3100 [344] ALEPH, DELPHI, L3, OPAL, SLD Collaborations, LEP Electroweak Working Group,
3101 SLD Electroweak Heavy Flavour Groups, S. Schael *et al.*, *Phys. Rept.* **427** (2006) 257,
3102 [arXiv:hep-ex/0509008](#).
- 3103 [345] D0 Collaboration, V. M. Abazov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* **D84** (2011) 012007, [arXiv:1104.4590](#).
- 3104 [346] CDF and D0 Collaborations, T. A. Aaltonen *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* **D97** (2018) 112007,
3105 [arXiv:1801.06283](#).
- 3106 [347] LHCb Collaboration, R. Aaij *et al.*, *JHEP* **11** (2015) 190, [arXiv:1509.07645](#).
- 3107 [348] ATLAS Collaboration, T. A. collaboration, .
- 3108 [349] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C78** (2018) 701,
3109 [arXiv:1806.00863](#).
- 3110 [350] J. Erler, “Global fits of the SM parameters,” in *7th Large Hadron Collider Physics*
3111 *Conference (LHCP 2019) Puebla, Puebla, Mexico, May 20-25, 2019*, 2019.
3112 [arXiv:1908.07327](#).
- 3113 [351] J. Erler and M. Schott, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* **106** (2019) 68, [arXiv:1902.05142](#).
- 3114 [352] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* **B672** (2009) 106, [arXiv:0807.0589](#).
- 3115 [353] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* **C64** (2009) 251, [arXiv:0901.0488](#).

- 3116 [354] H1 and ZEUS Collaborations, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *JHEP* 03 (2010) 035,
3117 [arXiv:0911.0858](#).
- 3118 [355] U. Baur and D. Zeppenfeld, *Nucl. Phys.* B325 (1989) 253.
- 3119 [356] U. Baur, B. A. Kniehl, J. A. M. Vermaseren and D. Zeppenfeld, “Single W and Z
3120 production at LEP / LHC,” in *ECFA Large Hadron Collider Workshop, Aachen,*
3121 *Germany, 4-9 Oct 1990: Proceedings.2.*, 1990.
- 3122 [357] U. Baur, J. A. M. Vermaseren and D. Zeppenfeld, *Nucl. Phys.* B375 (1992) 3.
- 3123 [358] J. Alwall, R. Frederix, S. Frixione, V. Hirschi, F. Maltoni, O. Mattelaer, H. S. Shao,
3124 T. Stelzer, P. Torrielli and M. Zaro, *JHEP* 07 (2014) 079, [arXiv:1405.0301](#).
- 3125 [359] NNPDF Collaboration, R. D. Ball, V. Bertone, S. Carrazza, L. Del Debbio, S. Forte,
3126 A. Guffanti, N. P. Hartland and J. Rojo, *Nucl. Phys.* B877 (2013) 290, [arXiv:1308.0598](#).
- 3127 [360] K. Hagiwara, S. Ishihara, R. Szalapski and D. Zeppenfeld, *Phys. Rev.* D48 (1993) 2182.
- 3128 [361] K. Hagiwara, S. Ishihara, R. Szalapski and D. Zeppenfeld, *Phys. Lett.* B283 (1992) 353.
- 3129 [362] A. De Rujula, M. B. Gavela, P. Hernandez and E. Masso, *Nucl. Phys.* B384 (1992) 3.
- 3130 [363] S. S. Biswal, M. Patra and S. Raychaudhuri, [arXiv:1405.6056](#).
- 3131 [364] I. T. Cakir, O. Cakir, A. Senol and A. T. Tasci, *Acta Phys. Polon.* B45 (2014) 1947,
3132 [arXiv:1406.7696](#).
- 3133 [365] R. Li, X.-M. Shen, K. Wang, T. Xu, L. Zhang and G. Zhu, *Phys. Rev.* D97 (2018)
3134 075043, [arXiv:1711.05607](#).
- 3135 [366] M. Köksal, A. A. Billur, A. Gutiérrez-Rodríguez and M. A. Hernández-Ruíz,
3136 [arXiv:1910.06747](#).
- 3137 [367] A. Gutiérrez-Rodríguez, M. Köksal, A. A. Billur and M. A. Hernández-Ruíz,
3138 [arXiv:1910.02307](#).
- 3139 [368] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B772 (2017) 21,
3140 [arXiv:1703.06095](#).
- 3141 [369] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, [arXiv:1907.08354](#).
- 3142 [370] S. Villa, *Nucl. Phys. Proc. Suppl.* 142 (2005) 391, [arXiv:hep-ph/0410208](#).
- 3143 [371] K. O. Mikaelian, M. A. Samuel and D. Sahdev, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 43 (1979) 746.
- 3144 [372] S. J. Brodsky and R. W. Brown, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 49 (1982) 966.
- 3145 [373] R. W. Brown, K. L. Kowalski and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* D28 (1983) 624.
3146 [Addendum: *Phys. Rev.*D29,2100(1984)].
- 3147 [374] M. A. Samuel and J. H. Reid, *Prog. Theor. Phys.* 76 (1986) 184.
- 3148 [375] S. Dutta, A. Goyal, M. Kumar and B. Mellado, *Eur. Phys. J.* C75 (2015) 577,
3149 [arXiv:1307.1688](#).
- 3150 [376] A. O. Bouzas and F. Larios, *Phys. Rev.* D88 (2013) 094007, [arXiv:1308.5634](#).
- 3151 [377] S. Ovin, X. Rouby and V. Lemaitre, “DELPHES, a framework for fast simulation of a
3152 generic collider experiment,” 2009. [arXiv:0903.2225](#).

- 3153 [378] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 06 (2014) 090, [arXiv:1403.7366](#).
- 3154 [379] H. Sun, *PoS DIS2018* (2018) 167.
- 3155 [380] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*736 (2014) 33–57,
3156 [arXiv:1404.2292](#).
- 3157 [381] J. A. Aguilar-Saavedra, *Acta Phys. Polon.* B35 (2004) 2695–2710,
3158 [arXiv:hep-ph/0409342](#).
- 3159 [382] J. Charles *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D*91 (2015) 073007, [arXiv:1501.05013](#).
- 3160 [383] I. Turk Cakir, A. Yilmaz, H. Denizli, A. Senol, H. Karadeniz and O. Cakir, *Adv. High*
3161 *Energy Phys.* 2017 (2017) 1572053, [arXiv:1705.05419](#).
- 3162 [384] O. Cakir, A. Yilmaz, I. Turk Cakir, A. Senol and H. Denizli, *Nucl. Phys. B*944 (2019)
3163 114640, [arXiv:1809.01923](#).
- 3164 [385] H. Sun and X. Wang, *Eur. Phys. J. C*78 (2018) 281, [arXiv:1602.04670](#).
- 3165 [386] FCC Collaboration, A. Abada *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*79 (2019) 474.
- 3166 [387] J. A. Aguilar-Saavedra and T. Riemann, “Probing top flavor changing neutral couplings
3167 at TESLA,” in *5th Workshop of the 2nd ECFA, Obernai, France, October 16-19, 1999,*
3168 2001. [arXiv:hep-ph/0102197](#).
- 3169 [388] Top Quark Working Group, K. Agashe *et al.*, “Working Group Report: Top Quark,” in
3170 *Community Summer Study on the Future of U.S. Particle Physics: Minneapolis, MN,*
3171 *USA, July 29-August 6, 2013,* 2013. [arXiv:1311.2028](#).
- 3172 [389] B. Coleppa, M. Kumar, S. Kumar and B. Mellado, *Phys. Lett. B*770 (2017) 335–341,
3173 [arXiv:1702.03426](#).
- 3174 [390] S. Atag and B. Sahin, *Phys. Rev. D*73 (2006) 074001.